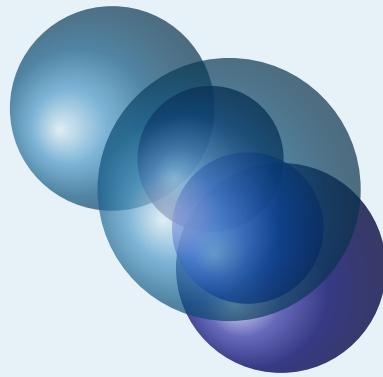
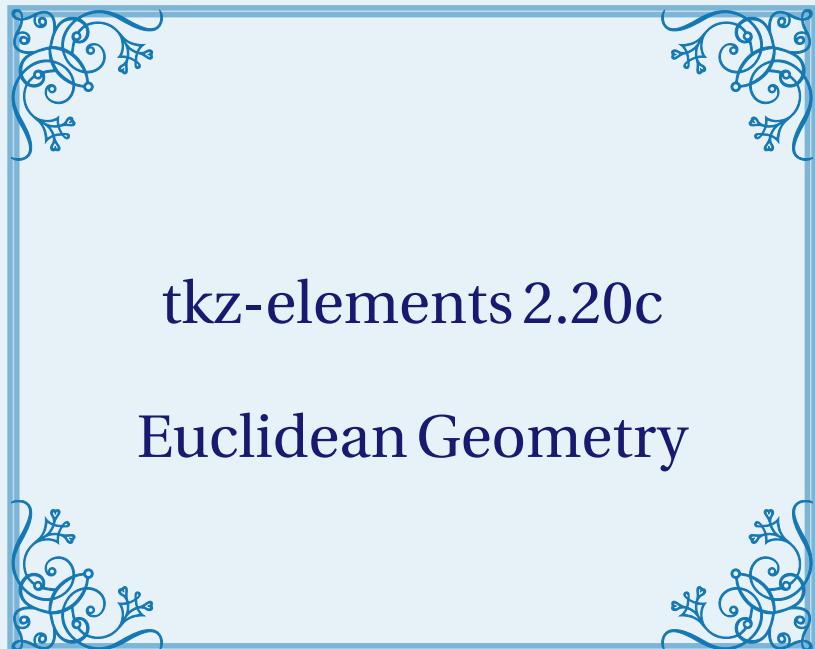


AlterMundus



Alain Matthes

March 26, 2024 Documentation V.2.20c

<http://altermundus.fr>

tkz-elements

Alain Matthes

This document compiles some notes about **tkz-elements**, the initial version of a Lua library designed to perform all the necessary calculations for defining objects in Euclidean geometry figures. Your document must be compiled using $\text{Lua}\text{\TeX}$.

With **tkz-elements**, definitions and calculations are exclusively conducted using Lua.

The primary programming approach offered is oriented towards object programming, utilizing object classes such as point, line, triangle, circle, and ellipse. Currently, after the calculations are completed, **tkz-euclide** or **TikZ** is used for drawing purposes.

I discovered Lua and object-oriented programming while developing this package, so it's highly likely that I've made a few mistakes. If you'd like to contribute to the development of this package or provide advice on how to proceed, please contact me via email.

Please note: English is not my native language, so there may be some errors."

Acknowledgements : I received much valuable advices, remarks, corrections from Nicolas Kisselhoff, David Carlisle, Roberto Giacomelli and Qrrbrbirlbel. Special thanks to Wolfgang Büchel for his invaluable contribution in correcting the examples.

I would also like to extend my gratitude to Eric Weisstein, creator of **MathWorld**.

You can find some examples on my site: altermundus.fr.

under construction!

Please report typos or any other comments to this documentation to: [Alain Matthes](#).

This file can be redistributed and/or modified under the terms of the \TeX Project Public License Distributed from [CTAN](#) archives.

Contents

1	Structure	9
2	Why <i>tkz-elements</i> ?	10
2.1	Calculation accuracy	10
2.1.1	Calculation accuracy in TikZ	10
2.1.2	Calculation accuracy in Lua	10
2.1.3	Using objects	10
2.1.4	Example: Apollonius circle	10
3	Presentation	13
3.1	With Lua	13
3.2	The main process	13
3.3	Complete example: Pappus circle	14
3.3.1	The figure	14
3.3.2	The code	14
3.4	Another example with comments: South Pole	15
4	Writing Convention	17
4.1	Miscellaneous	17
4.2	Assigning a Name to a Point	17
4.3	Assigning a Name to Other Objects	18
4.4	Writing conventions for attributes, methods.	18
5	Work organization	18
5.1	Scale problem	20
5.2	Code presentation	20
6	Transfers	21
6.1	Fom Lua to <i>tkz-euclide</i> or TikZ	21
6.1.1	Points transfer	21
6.1.2	Other transfers	22
7	Class and object	23
7.1	Class	23
7.2	Object	23
7.2.1	Attributes	23
7.2.2	Methods	23
8	Class point	24
8.1	Attributes of a point	24
8.1.1	Example:point attributes	25
8.1.2	Argand diagram	26
8.2	Methods of the class point	27
8.2.1	Example: method north (d)	27
8.2.2	Length transfer	27
8.2.3	Example: method polar	28
8.2.4	Method normalize ()	28
8.2.5	Orthogonal (d) method	29
8.2.6	at method	29
8.2.7	Example: rotation of points	29
8.2.8	Object rotation	30
8.2.9	Object symmetry	30

9	Class line	31
9.1	Attributes of a line	31
9.1.1	Example: attributes of class line	32
9.1.2	Method new and line attributes	32
9.2	Methods of the class line	33
9.2.1	Method report	34
9.2.2	Triangle with two_angles	34
9.2.3	Triangle with three given sides	35
9.2.4	Triangle with side between side and angle	35
9.2.5	About sacred triangles	35
9.2.6	Method point	36
9.2.7	Normalize	37
9.2.8	Barycenter with a line	37
9.2.9	Example: new line from a defined line	38
9.2.10	Example: projection of several points	38
9.2.11	Example: combination of methods	39
9.2.12	Example: translation	39
9.2.13	Example: distance and projection	40
9.2.14	Reflection of object	40
9.3	Apollonius circle MA/MB = k	40
10	Class circle	42
10.1	Attributes of a circle	42
10.1.1	Example: circle attributes	42
10.2	Methods of the class circle	43
10.2.1	Altshiller	44
10.2.2	Lemoine	44
10.2.3	Inversion: point, line and circle	45
10.2.4	Inversion: point	45
10.2.5	Inversion: line	45
10.2.6	Inversion: circle	45
10.2.7	midcircle	46
10.3	Circles_position	49
10.4	Common tangent: Angle of two intersecting circles	49
10.5	Common tangent: orthogonality	50
10.6	In_out for circle and disk	51
11	Class triangle	53
11.1	Attributes of a triangle	53
11.2	Triangle attributes: angles	53
11.2.1	Example: triangle attributes	54
11.3	Methods of the class triangle	55
11.3.1	Euler line	56
11.4	Euler ellipse	56
11.4.1	Steiner inellipse and circumellipse	57
11.5	Harmonic division and bisector	58
12	Class ellipse	59
12.1	Attributes of an ellipse	59
12.1.1	Atributes of an ellipse: example	60
12.2	Methods of the class ellipse	60
12.2.1	Method new	61
12.2.2	Method foci	61

12.2.3 Method point and radii	62
13 Class Quadrilateral	64
13.1 Quadrilateral Attributes	64
13.1.1 Quadrilateral attributes	64
13.2 Quadrilateral methods	64
13.2.1 Inscribed quadrilateral	65
14 Class square	66
14.1 Square attributes	66
14.1.1 Example: square attributes	66
14.2 Square methods	67
14.2.1 Square with side method	67
15 Class rectangle	68
15.1 Rectangle attributes	68
15.1.1 Example	68
15.2 Rectangle methods	69
15.2.1 Angle method	69
15.2.2 Side method	69
15.2.3 Diagonal method	70
15.2.4 Gold method	70
16 Class parallelogram	71
16.1 Parallelogram attributes	71
16.1.1 Example: attributes	71
16.2 Parallelogram methods	72
16.2.1 parallelogram with fourth method	72
17 Class regular polygon	73
17.1 regular_polygon attributes	73
17.1.1 Pentagon	73
17.2 regular_polygon methods	73
18 Class vector	74
18.1 Attributes of a vector	74
18.1.1 Example vector attributes	75
18.2 Methods of the class vector	75
18.2.1 Example of methods	76
19 Class matrix	77
19.1 Matrix creation	77
19.2 Display a matrix: method print	77
19.3 Attributes of a matrix	77
19.3.1 Attribute set	78
19.3.2 Determinant with real numbers	78
19.3.3 Determinant with complex numbers	78
19.4 Metamethods for the matrices	78
19.4.1 Addition and subtraction of matrices	79
19.4.2 Multiplication and power of matrices	79
19.4.3 Metamethod eq	79
19.5 Methods of the class matrix	79
19.5.1 Function new	80
19.5.2 Function vector	80

19.5.3	Method homogenization	80
19.5.4	Function htm: homogeneous transformation matrix	81
19.5.5	Method get_htm_point	81
19.5.6	Method htm_apply	81
19.5.7	Function square	82
19.5.8	Method print	82
19.5.9	Display a table or array: function print_array	83
19.5.10	Get an element of a matrix: method get	83
19.5.11	Inverse matrix: : method inverse	83
19.5.12	Inverse matrix with power syntax	84
19.5.13	Transpose matrix: method transpose	84
19.5.14	Method method adjugate	84
19.5.15	Method method identity	84
19.5.16	Diagonalization: method diagonalize	85
19.5.17	Method is_orthogonal	85
19.5.18	Method is_diagonal	85
20	Math constants and functions	86
20.1	Length of a segment	86
20.2	Harmonic division with tkzphi	86
20.3	Function islinear	87
20.4	Function value	87
20.5	Function real	87
20.6	Transfer from lua to \TeX	87
20.7	Normalized angles : Slope of lines (ab), (ac) and (ad)	87
20.8	Get angle	88
20.9	Dot or scalar product	89
20.10	Alignment or orthogonality	89
20.11	Bisector and altitude	89
20.12	Other functions	90
	20.12.1 Function solve_quadratic	90
21	Intersections	91
21.1	Line-line	91
21.2	Line-circle	92
21.3	Circle-circle	93
21.4	Line-ellipse	94
22	In-depth study	95
22.1	The tables	95
	22.1.1 General tables	95
	22.1.2 Table z	96
22.2	Transfers	96
22.3	Complex numbers library and point	97
	22.3.1 Example of complex use	97
	22.3.2 Point operations(complex)	98
22.4	Barycenter	99
	22.4.1 Using the barycentre	99
	22.4.2 Incenter of a triangle	99
22.5	Loop and table notation	99
22.6	In_out method	100
	22.6.1 In_out for a line	100

22.7	Determinant and dot product	101
22.7.1	Determinant	101
22.7.2	Dot product	101
22.7.3	Dot product: orthogonality test	102
22.7.4	Dot product: projection	102
22.8	Point method	102
22.9	Behind the objects	103
23	Examples	104
23.1	D'Alembert 1	104
23.2	D'Alembert 2	104
23.3	Alternate	105
23.4	Apollonius circle	105
23.5	Apollonius and circle circumscribed	106
23.6	Apollonius circles in a triangle	107
23.7	Archimedes	109
23.8	Bankoff circle	109
23.9	Excircles	111
23.10	Orthogonal circle through	112
23.11	Divine ratio	113
23.12	Director circle	115
23.13	Gold division	115
23.14	Ellipse	116
23.15	Ellipse with radii	117
23.16	Ellipse_with_foci	117
23.17	Euler relation	118
23.18	External angle	119
23.19	Internal angle	119
23.20	Feuerbach theorem	120
23.21	Gold ratio with segment	121
23.22	Gold Arbelos	121
23.23	Harmonic division v1	122
23.24	Harmonic division v2	123
23.25	Menelaus	123
23.26	Radical axis v1	123
23.27	Radical axis v2	124
23.28	Radical axis v3	125
23.29	Radical axis v4	126
23.30	Radical center	128
23.31	Radical circle	129
23.32	Euler ellipse	130
23.33	Gold Arbelos properties	131
23.34	Apollonius circle v1 with inversion	132
23.35	Apollonius circle v2	133
23.36	Orthogonal circles v1	134
23.37	Orthogonal circles v2	135
23.38	Orthogonal circle to two circles	136
23.39	Midcircles	138
23.40	Pencil v1	139
23.41	Pencil v2	140
23.42	Power v1	141
23.43	Power v2	142
23.44	Reim v1	142

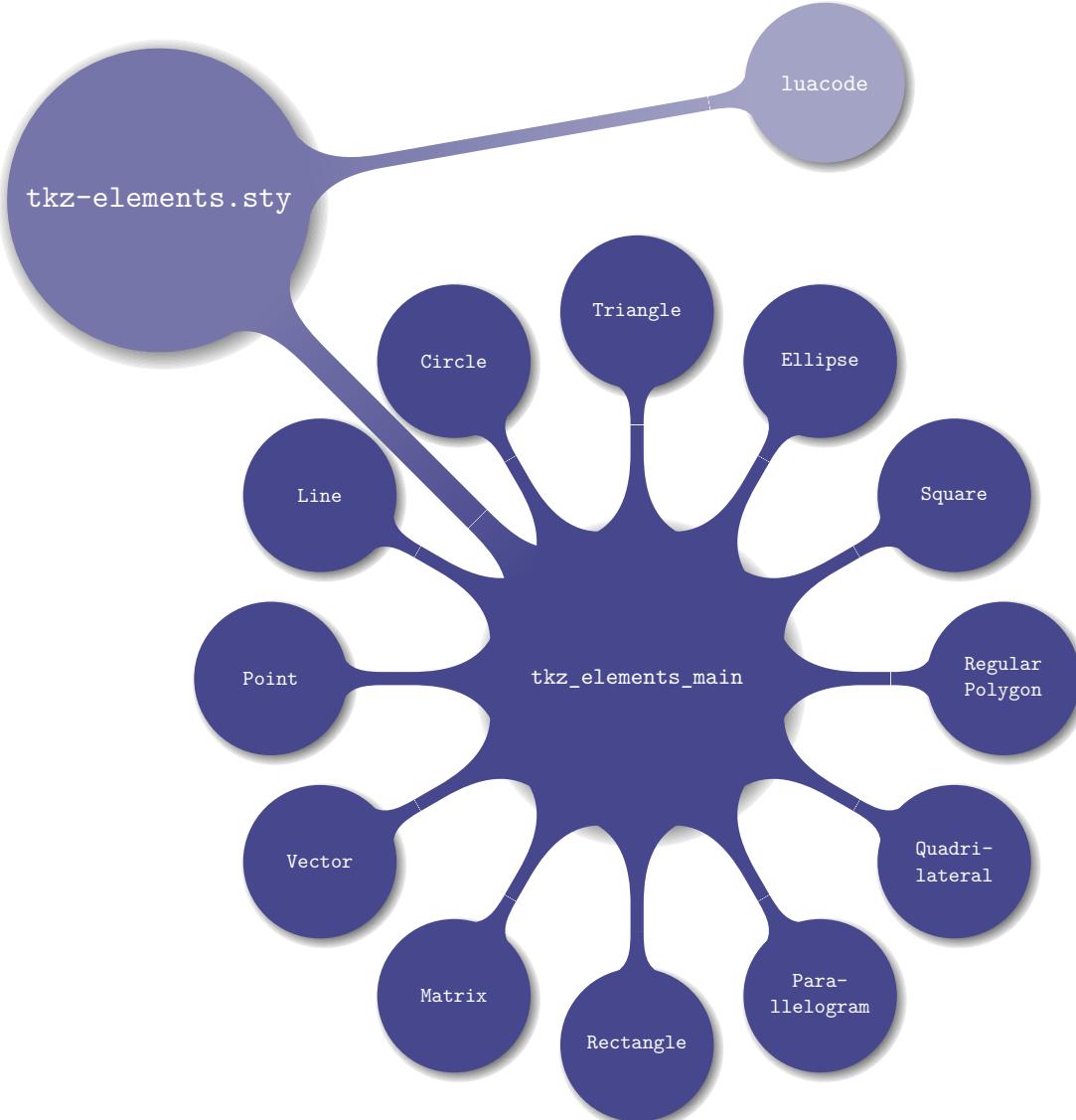
23.45	Reim v2	143
23.46	Reim v3	144
23.47	Tangent and circle	145
23.48	Homothety	146
23.49	Tangent and chord	146
23.50	Three chords	146
23.51	Three tangents	148
23.52	Midarc	148
23.53	Lemoine Line without macro	149
23.54	First Lemoine circle	149
23.55	First and second Lemoine circles	150
23.56	Inversion	151
23.57	Gergonne point	152
23.58	Antiparallel through Lemoine point	152
23.59	Soddy circle without function	152
23.60	Soddy circle with function	154
23.60.1	Pappus chain	155
23.61	Three Circles	157
23.62	pentagons in a golden arbelos	158

1 Structure

`tkz-elements.sty` loads the `luacode` package to create the `tkzelements` environment, which is based on the `luacode` environment.

Within the `tkzelements` environment, the scale is initialized to 1, and then all values in various tables are cleared. The package defines two macros `\tkzGetNodes` and `\tkzUseLua`.

Additionally, the package loads the file `tkz_elements_main.lua`. This file initializes all the tables that will be used by the modules in which the classes are defined.



The current classes are (some are still inactive):

- active : point (z) ; line (L) ; circle (C) ; triangle (T) ; ellipse (E) ; quadrilateral (Q) ; square (S) ; rectangle (R) ; parallelogram (P) ; regular_polygon (RP); vector (V).
- inactive : matrix (M) ; vector (V).

If name is name of a class, you can find its definition in the file `tkz_elements_name.lua`.

2 Why *tkz-elements*?

2.1 Calculation accuracy

2.1.1 Calculation accuracy in TikZ

With TikZ, the expression `veclen(x,y)` calculates the expression $\sqrt{x^2 + y^2}$. This calculation is achieved through a polynomial approximation, drawing inspiration from the ideas of Rouben Rostamian.

```
\pgfmathparse{veclen(65,72)} \pgfmathresult
```

☞ $\sqrt{65^2 + 72^2} \approx 96.9884$.

2.1.2 Calculation accuracy in Lua

A `luaveclen` macro can be defined as follows:

```
\def\luaveclen#1#2{\directlua{tex.print(string.format(
  '\percentchar.5f',math.sqrt((#1)*(#1)+(#2)*(#2))))}}
```

and

```
\luaveclen{65}{72}
```

gives

☞ $\sqrt{65^2 + 72^2} = 97 !!$

The error, though insignificant when it comes to the placement of an object on a page by a hundredth of a point, becomes problematic for the results of mathematical demonstrations. Moreover, these inaccuracies can accumulate and lead to erroneous constructions.

To address this lack of precision, I initially introduced the `fp`, followed by the package `xfp`. More recently, with the emergence of `LuaTEX`, I incorporated a `Lua` option aimed at performing calculations with `Lua`.

This was the primary motivation behind creating the package, with the secondary goal being the introduction of object-oriented programming (OOP) and simplifying programming with `Lua`. The concept of OOP persuaded me to explore its various possibilities further.

At that time, I had received some `Lua` programming examples from **Nicolas Kisselhoff**, but I struggled to understand the code initially, so I dedicated time to studying `Lua` patiently. Eventually, I was able to develop `tkz-elements`, incorporating many of his ideas that I adapted for the package.

2.1.3 Using objects

Subsequently, I came across an article by **Roberto Giacomelli**¹ on object-oriented programming using `Lua` and TikZ tools. This served as my second source of inspiration. Not only did this approach enable programming to be executed step-by-step, but the introduction of objects facilitated a direct link between the code and geometry. As a result, the code became more readable, explicit, and better structured.

2.1.4 Example: Apollonius circle

Problem: The objective is to identify an inner tangent circle to the three exinscribed circles of a triangle.

For additional details, refer to [MathWorld](#) for more details.

¹ [Grafica ad oggetti con Lua^{TEX}](#)

This example served as my reference for testing the **tkz-euclide** package. Initially, with my first methods and the tools available to me, the results lacked precision. However, with **tkz-elements**, I now have access to more powerful and precise tools that are also easier to use.

The fundamental principles of figure construction with **tkz-euclide** remain intact: definitions, calculations, tracings, labels, as well as the step-by-step programming, mirroring the process of construction with a ruler and compass.

This version utilizes the simplest construction method made possible by Lua.

```
\begin{tkzelements}
scale      = .4
z.A        = point: new (0,0)
z.B        = point: new (6,0)
z.C        = point: new (0.8,4)
T.ABC      = triangle : new ( z.A,z.B,z.C )
z.N        = T.ABC.eulercenter
z.S        = T.ABC.spiekercenter
T.feuerbach = T.ABC : feuerbach ()
z.Ea,z.Eb,z.Ec = get_points ( T.feuerbach )
T.excentral = T.ABC : excentral ()
z.Ja,z.Jb,z.Jc = get_points ( T.excentral )
C.JaEa     = circle: new (z.Ja,z.Ea)
C.ortho     = circle: radius (z.S,math.sqrt(C.JaEa: power(z.S)))
z.a        = C.ortho.through
C.euler    = T.ABC: euler_circle ()
C.apo      = C.ortho : inversion (C.euler)
z.O        = C.apo.center
z.xa,z.xb,z.xc = C.ortho : inversion (z.Ea,z.Eb,z.Ec)
\end{tkzelements}
```

The creation of an object encapsulates its attributes (its characteristics) and methods (i.e. the actions that are specific to it). Subsequently, it is assigned a reference (a name) which is linked to the object using a table. This table functions as an associative array that links the reference, called a key, to a value, in this case, the object. Further elaboration on these notions will be provided later.

For instance, let `T` be a table associating the object `triangle` with the key `ABC`. `T.ABC` is also a table, and its elements are accessed using keys that correspond to attributes of the triangle. These attributes have been defined within the package.

```
z.N = T.ABC.eulercenter
```

`N` is the name of the point, `eulercenter` is an attribute of the triangle.²

```
T.excentral = T.ABC : excentral ()
```

In this context, `excentral` is a method associated with the `T.ABC` object. It defines the triangle formed by the centers of the exinscribed circles.

Of particular importance are two lines of code. The first one below demonstrates that the exceptional precision provided by Lua allows for the definition of a radius through a complex calculation. The radius of the radical circle is determined by $\sqrt{\Pi(S, C(Ja, Ea))}$ (square root of the power of point `S` with respect to the exinscribed circle with center `Ja` passing through `Ea`).

² The center of the Euler circle, or center of the nine-point circle, is a characteristic of every triangle.

```
C.ortho = circle: radius (z.S,math.sqrt(C.JaEa: power(z.S)))
```

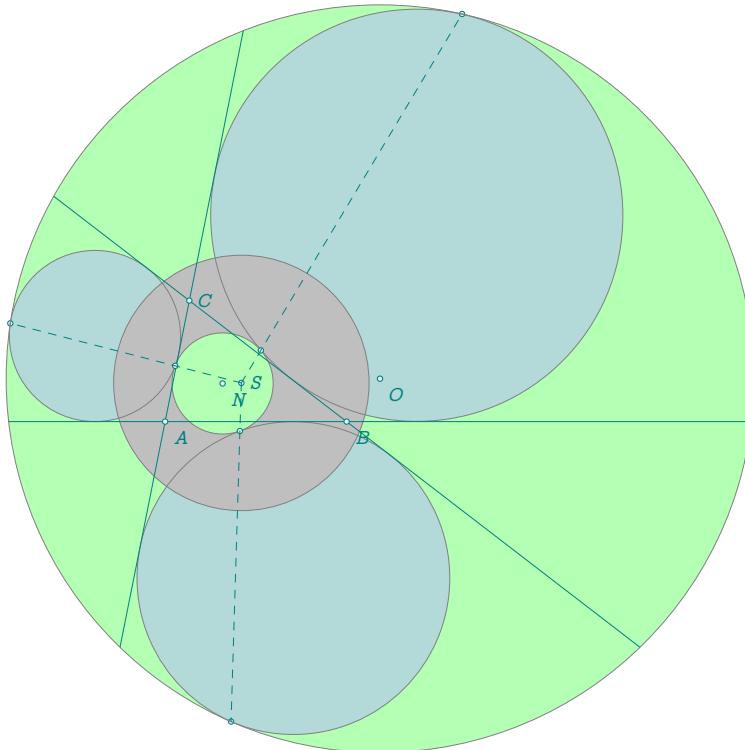
Lastly, it's worth noting that the inversion of the Euler circle with respect to the radical circle yields the Apollonius circle³. This transformation requires an object as a parameter, which is recognized by its type (all objects are typed in the package), and the method determines which algorithm to use according to this type.

```
C.apo = C.ortho : inversion (C.euler)
```

Now that all the points have been defined, it's time to start drawing the paths. To accomplish this, nodes need to be created. This is the role of the macro . Refer to 6.1.1

The subsequent section exclusively deals with drawings, and is managed by *tkz-euclide*.

```
\begin{tikzpicture}
\tkzGetNodes
\tkzFillCircles[green!30](0,xa)
\tkzFillCircles[teal!30](Ja,Ea,Jb,Eb,Jc,Ec)
\tkzFillCircles[lightgray](S,a)
\tkzFillCircles[green!30](N,Ea)
\tkzDrawPoints(xa,xb,xc)
\tkzDrawCircles(Ja,Ea,Jb,Eb,Jc,Ec,S,a,0,xa,N,Ea)
\tkzClipCircle(0,xa)
\tkzDrawLines[add=3 and 3](A,B,A,C,B,C)
\tkzDrawPoints(0,A,B,C,S,Ea,Eb,Ec,N)
\tkzDrawSegments[dashed](S,xa S,xb S,xc)
\tkzLabelPoints(0,N,A,B)
\tkzLabelPoints[right](S,C)
\end{tikzpicture}
```



³ The nine-point circle, or Euler circle, is externally tangent to the three circles. The points of tangency form Feuerbach's triangle.

3 Presentation

3.1 With Lua

The primary function of tkz-elements is to calculate dimensions and define points, which is achieved using Lua. You can view tkz-elements as a kernel that is utilized either by tkz-euclide or by TikZ. Definitions and calculations take place within the environment **tkzelements**, which is based on **luacode**.

The key points are:

- The source file must be **UTF8** encoded.
- Compilation is done with **Lua^{TEX}**.
- You need to load TikZ or tkz-euclide and tkz-elements.
- Definitions and calculations are performed in an (orthonormal) Cartesian coordinate system, using Luawithin the **tkzelements** environment.

On the right, you can see the minimum template.

The code is divided into two parts, represented by two environments **tkzelements** and **tikzpicture**. In the first environment, you place your Lua code, while in the second, you use tkz-euclide commands.

```
% !TEX TS-program = lualatex
% Created by Alain Matthes
\documentclass{standalone}
\usepackage{tkz-euclide}
% or simply TikZ
\usepackage{tkz-elements}
\begin{document}

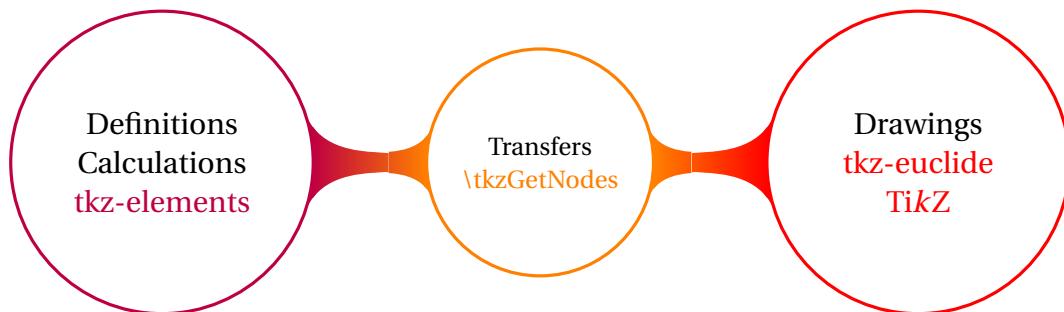
\begin{tkzelements}
    scale = 1
% definition of some points
z.A = point : new ( , )
z.B = point : new ( , )

...code...
\end{tkzelements}

\begin{tikzpicture}
% point transfer to Nodes
\tkzGetNodes

\end{tikzpicture}
\end{document}
```

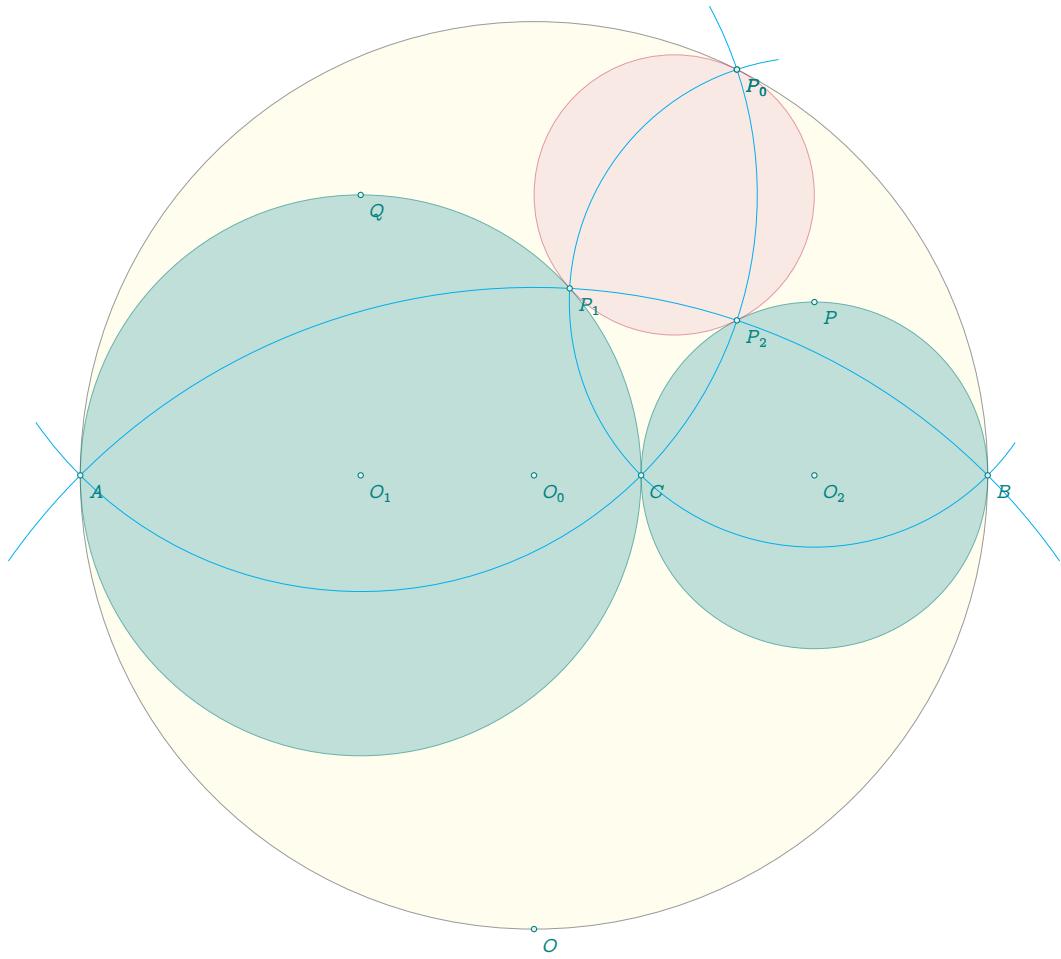
3.2 The main process



After obtaining all the necessary points for the drawing, they must be transformed into **nodes** so that TikZ or tkz-euclide can render the figure. This is accomplished using the macro **\tkzGetNodes**. This macro iterates through all the elements of the table **z** using the key (which is essentially the name of the point) and retrieves the associated values, namely the coordinates of the point (node).

3.3 Complete example: Pappus circle

3.3.1 The figure



3.3.2 The code

```
% !TEX TS-program = lualatex
\documentclass{article}
\usepackage{tkz-euclide}
\usepackage{tkz-elements}
\begin{document}

\begin{tkzelements}
z.A      = point: new (0 , 0)
z.B      = point: new (10 , 0)          -- creation of two fixed points $A$ and $B$
L.AB    = line: new ( z.A, z.B)
z.C    = L.AB: gold_ratio ()           -- use of a method linked to "line"
z.O_0   = line: new ( z.A, z.B).mid   -- midpoint of segment with an attribute of "line"
z.O_1   = line: new ( z.A, z.C).mid   -- objects are not stored and cannot be reused.
z.O_2   = line: new ( z.C, z.B).mid
C.AB   = circle: new ( z.O_0, z.B)   -- new object "circle" stored and reused
C.AC   = circle: new ( z.O_1, z.C)
C.CB   = circle: new ( z.O_2, z.B)
z.P    = C.CB.north                  -- "north" attributes of a circle
\end{tkzelements}

```

```

z.Q      = C.AC.north
z.O      = C.AB.south
z.c      = z.C : north (2)           -- "north" method of a point (needs a parameter)
C.PC    = circle: new ( z.P, z.C)
C.QA    = circle: new ( z.Q, z.A)
z.P_Q   = intersection (C.PC,C.AB) -- search for intersections of two circles.
z.P_1   = intersection (C.PC,C.AC) -- idem
_,z.P_2 = intersection (C.QA,C.CB) -- idem
z.O_3   = triangle: new ( z.P_Q, z.P_1, z.P_2).circumcenter -- circumcenter attribute of "triangle"
\end{tkzelements}

\begin{tikzpicture}
\tkzGetNodes
\tkzDrawCircle[black,fill=yellow!20,opacity=.4](O_Q,B)
\tkzDrawCircles[teal,fill=teal!40,opacity=.6](O_1,C O_2,B)
\tkzDrawCircle[purple,fill=purple!20,opacity=.4](O_3,P_Q)
\tkzDrawArc[cyan,delta=10](Q,A)(P_Q)
\tkzDrawArc[cyan,delta=10](P,P_Q)(B)
\tkzDrawArc[cyan,delta=10](O,B)(A)
\tkzDrawPoints(A,B,C,O_Q,O_1,O_2,P,Q,P_Q,P_1,P_2,O)
\tkzLabelPoints(A,B,C,O_Q,O_1,O_2,P,Q,P_Q,P_1,P_2,O)
\end{tikzpicture}
\end{document}

```

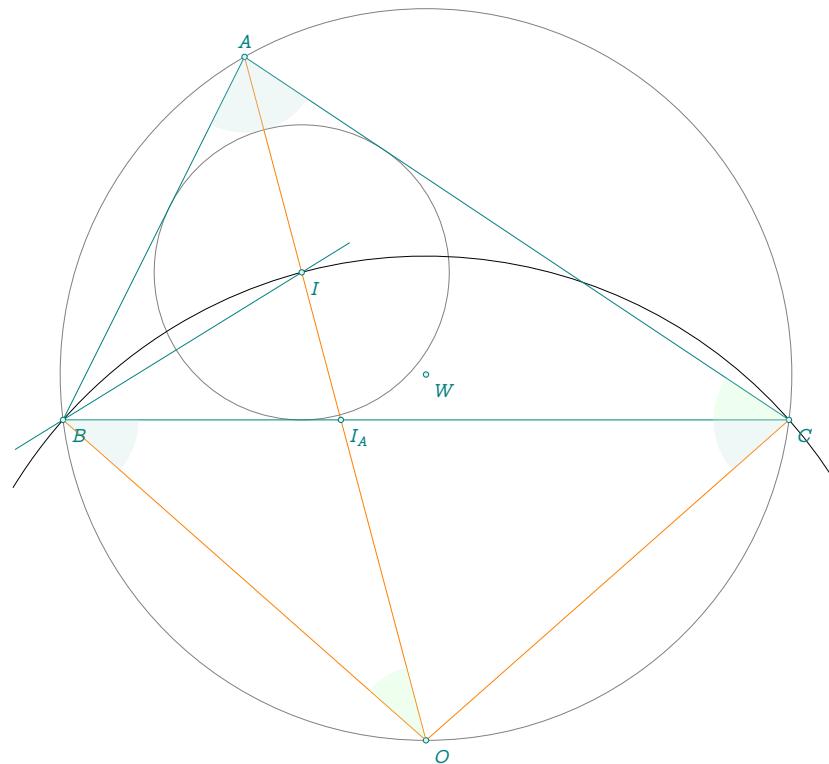
3.4 Another example with comments: South Pole

Here's another example with comments

```

% !TEX TS-program = lualatex
\documentclass{standalone}
\usepackage{tkz-euclide,tkz-elements}
\begin{document}
\begin{tkzelements}
z.A      = point: new (2 , 4)           -- we create environment tkzelements
z.B      = point: new (0 , 0)           -- three fixed points are used
z.C      = point: new (8 , 0)
T.ABC    = triangle: new (z.A,z.B,z.C) -- we create a new triangle object
C.ins    = T.ABC: in_circle ()          -- we get the incircle of this triangle
z.I      = C.ins.center                -- center is an attribute of the circle
z.T      = C.ins.through               -- through is also an attribute
-- z.I,z.T = get_points (C.ins)         -- get_points is a shortcut
C.cir    = T.ABC : circum_circle ()    -- we get the circumscribed circle
z.W      = C.cir.center                -- we get the center of this circle
z.O      = C.cir.south                 -- now we get the south pole of this circle
L.AO     = line: new (z.A,z.O)         -- we create an object "line"
L.BC     = T.ABC.bc                   -- we get the line (BC)
z.I_A    = intersection (L.AO,L.BC)    -- we search the intersection of the last lines
\end{tkzelements}

```



Here's the tikzpicture environment to obtain the drawing:

```
\begin{tikzpicture}
\tkzGetNodes
\tkzDrawCircles(W,A I,T)
\tkzDrawArc(O,C)(B)
\tkzDrawPolygon(A,B,C)
\tkzDrawSegments[new](A,O B,O C,O)
\tkzDrawLine(B,I)
\tkzDrawPoints(A,B,C,I,I_A,W,O)
\tkzFillAngles[green!20,opacity=.3](A,O,B A,C,B)
\tkzFillAngles[teal!20,opacity=.3](O,B,C B,C,O B,A,O O,A,C)
\tkzLabelPoints(I,I_A,W,B,C,O)
\tkzLabelPoints[above](A)
\end{tikzpicture}
```

4 Writing Convention

4.1 Miscellaneous

- Numerical variable: the writing conventions for real numbers are the same as for Lua.
- Complex numbers: Similar to real numbers, but to define them, you must write `za = point (1,2)`. Mathematically, this corresponds to $1+2i$, which you can find with `tex.print(tostring(za))`. (Refer 22.3)
- Boolean: you can write `bool = true` or `bool = false` then with Lua you can use the code :

```
if bool == ... then ... else ... end
```

and outside the environment **tkzelements** you can use the macro

```
\ifthenelse{\equal{\tkzUseLua{bool}}{true}}{ ... }{ ... }
```

after loading the **ifthen** package.

- String: if `st = "Euler's formula"` then

```
\tkzUseLua{st} gives Euler's formula
```

4.2 Assigning a Name to a Point

At present, the only obligation is to store the points in the table `z`⁴ if you intend to use them in TikZ or tkz-euclide. If a point will not be used, you can designate it as you wish while adhering to Lua conventions.

Points within the **tkzelements** environment must follow a convention in the form `z.name`, where name represents the name of the corresponding **node**.

As for the conventions for designating name you must adhere to Lua conventions in particular cases.

1. The use of prime can be problematic. If the point name contains more than one symbol and ends with `p` then when passing into TikZ or tkz-euclide, the letters `p` will be replaced by `'` using the macro `\tkzGetNodes`;
2. Alternatively, for a more explicit code, suppose you want to designate a point as "euler". You could, for example, write `euler = ...`, and at the end of the code for the transfer, `z.E = euler`. It is also possible to use a temporary name `euler` and to replace it in TikZ. Either at the time of placing the labels, or for example by using `pgfnodenamealias{E}{euler}`. This possibility also applies in other cases: prime, double prime, etc.

Here are some different ways of naming a point:

```
- z.A = point : new (1,2)
- z.Bp = point : new (3,4) -> this gives B' in the tikzpicture
- z.H_a = T.ABC : altitude () -> this gives H_a in the tikzpicture code and  $H_a$  in the display.
```

⁴ To place the point M in the table, simply write `z.M = ...` or `z["M"] = ...`

4.3 Assigning a Name to Other Objects

You have the flexibility to assign names to objects other than points. However, it's advisable to adhere to certain conventions to enhance code readability. For my examples, I've chosen the following conventions: first of all, I store the objects in tables: L for lines and segments, C for circles, T for triangles, E for ellipses.

- For lines, I use the names of the two points they pass through. For example, if a line passes through points A and B , I name the line $L.AB$.
- Circles are stored in table named C. For example, I name $C.AB$ the circle of center A passing through B . Other names like $C.euler$ or $C.external$ are also acceptable.
- Triangles are stored in table named T. For example, I name $T.ABC$ the triangle whose vertices are A , B and C . However, names like $T.feuerbach$ are also acceptable.
- Ellipses are stored in table named E. For ellipses, I name $E.ABC$ the ellipse with center A through vertex B and covertex C .

Adhering to these conventions can help improve the readability of the code.

4.4 Writing conventions for attributes, methods.

You must use the conventions of Lua, so

- To obtain an , for all objects, the convention is identical: `object.attribute`. For example, for the point A we access its abscissa with `z.A.re` and its ordinate with `z.A.im`; as for its type we obtain it with `z.A.type`. To get the south pole of the circle $C.OA$ you need to write: `C.OA.south`.
- To use a method such as obtaining the incircle of a triangle ABC, just write
`C.incircle = T.ABC : in_circle ()`.
- Some methods need a parameter. For example, to know the distance between a point C to the line (A,B) we will write
`d = L.AB : distance (z.C)`.
- Use the `to` to store a result you don't want to use. If you only need the second point of an intersection between a line and a circle, you would write
`_ , z.J = intersection (L.AB , C.OC)`.

5 Work organization

Here's a sample organization.

The line `% !TEX TS-program = lualatex` ensures that you compile with $\text{Lua}\text{\TeX}$. The `standalone` class is useful, as all you need to do here is create a figure.

The package `ifthen` is useful if you need to use some Boolean.

The macro `\LuaCodeDebugOn` allows you to try and find errors in Lua code.

While it's possible to leave the Lua code in the `tkzelements` environment, externalizing this code has its advantages.

The first advantage is that, if you use a good editor, you have a better presentation of the code. Styles differ between Lua and \TeX , making the code clearer. This is how I proceeded, then reintegrated the code into the main code.

Another advantage is that you don't have to incorrectly comment the code. For Lua code, you comment lines with `--` (double minus sign), whereas for \TeX , you comment with `%`.

A third advantage is that the code can be reused.

```
% !TEX TS-program = lualatex
% Created by Alain Matthes on 2024-01-09.

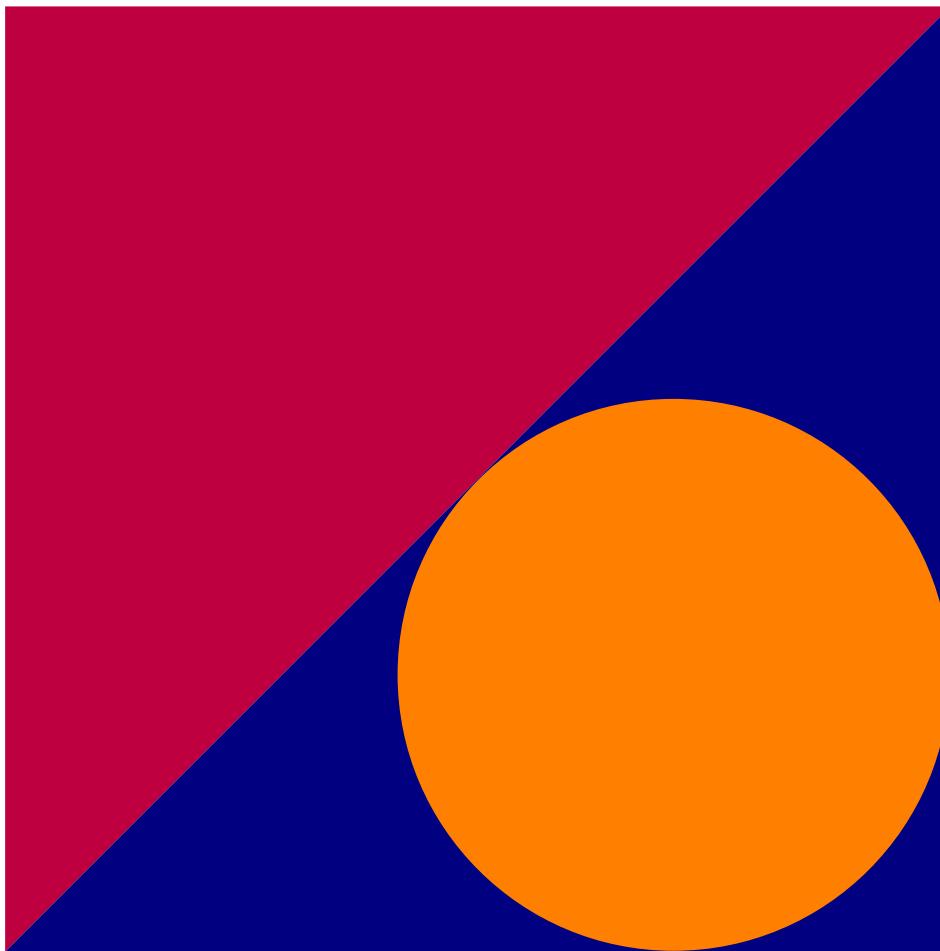
\documentclass[margin = 12pt]{standalone}
\usepackage{tkz-euclide}
\usepackage{tkz-elements,ifthen}

\begin{document}
\LuaCodeDebugOn
\begin{tkzelements}
scale = 1.25
dofile ("sangaku.lua")
\end{tkzelements}

\begin{tikzpicture}
\tkzGetNodes
\tkzDrawCircle(I,F)
\tkzFillPolygon[color = purple](A,C,D)%
\tkzFillPolygon[color = blue!50!black](A,B,C)%
\tkzFillCircle[color = orange](I,F)%
\end{tikzpicture}
\end{document}
```

And here is the code for the Lua part: the file `ex_sangaku.lua`

```
z.A      = point : new ( 0,0 )
z.B      = point : new ( 8,0 )
L.AB     = line : new ( z.A , z.B )
S        = L.AB : square ()
_,_,z.C,z.D = get_points (S)
z.F      = S.ac : projection (z.B)
L.BF     = line : new (z.B,z.F)
T.ABC    = triangle : new ( z.A , z.B , z.C )
L.bi     = T.ABC : bisector (2)
z.c      = L.bi.pb
L.Cc    = line : new (z.C,z.c)
z.I      = intersection (L.Cc,L.BF)
```



5.1 Scale problem

If necessary, it's better to perform scaling in the Lua section. This approach tends to be more accurate. However, there is a caveat to be aware of. I've made it a point to avoid using numerical values in my codes whenever possible. Generally, these values only appear in the definition of fixed points. If the `scale` option is used, scaling is applied when points are created. Let's imagine you want to organize your code as follows:

```
scale = 1.5
xB = 8
z.B      = point : new ( xB,0 )
Scaling would then be ineffective, as the numerical values are not modified, only the point coordinates. To account for scaling, use the function value (v) .
scale = 1.5
xB = value (8)
z.B      = point : new ( xB,0 )
```

5.2 Code presentation

The key point is that, unlike \LaTeX or \TeX , you can insert spaces absolutely anywhere.

6 Transfers

6.1 From Lua to tkz-euclide or TikZ

In this section, we'll explore how to transfer points, Booleans, and numerical values.

6.1.1 Points transfer

We utilize an environment **tkzelements** outside an **tikzpicture** environment which allows us to perform all the necessary calculations. Then, we execute the macro which transforms the affixes of the table **z** into **Nodes**. Finally, we proceed with the drawing.

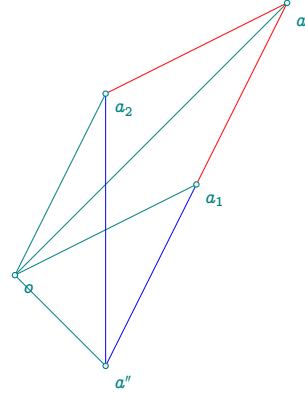
At present, the drawing program is either TikZ or tkz-euclide. However, you have the option to use another package for plotting. To do so, you'll need to create a macro similar to **\tkzGetNodes**. Of course, this package must be capable of storing points like TikZ or tkz-euclide.

```
\def\tkzGetNodes{\directlua{%
    for K,V in pairs(z) do
        local n,sd,ft
        n = string.len(K)
        if n >1 then
            _,_,ft, sd = string.find( K , "(.+)(.)" )
            if sd == "p" then K=ft.."" end
            _,_,xsd = string.find( ft , "(.+)(.)" )
            if xsd == "p" then K=xsd.."'".."" end
        end
        tex.print("\coordinate ("..K.."") at ("..V.re..","..V.im..") ;\\\"")
    end}
}
```

See the section In-depth Study 22 for an explanation of the previous code.

The environment **tkzelements** allows to use the underscore **_** and the macro **\tkzGetNodes** allows to obtain names of nodes containing **prime** or **double prime**. (Refer to the next example)

```
\begin{tkzelements}
    scale = 1.2
    z.o  = point: new (0,0)
    z.a_1 = point: new (2,1)
    z.a_2 = point: new (1,2)
    z.ap  = z.a_1 + z.a_2
    z.app = z.a_1 - z.a_2
\end{tkzelements}
\begin{tikzpicture}
    \tkzGetNodes
    \tkzDrawSegments(o,a_1 o,a_2 o,a' o,a'')
    \tkzDrawSegments[red](a_1,a' a_2,a')
    \tkzDrawSegments[blue](a_1,a'' a_2,a'')
    \tkzDrawPoints(a_1,a_2,a',o,a'')
    \tkzLabelPoints(o,a_1,a_2,a',a'')
\end{tikzpicture}
```



6.1.2 Other transfers

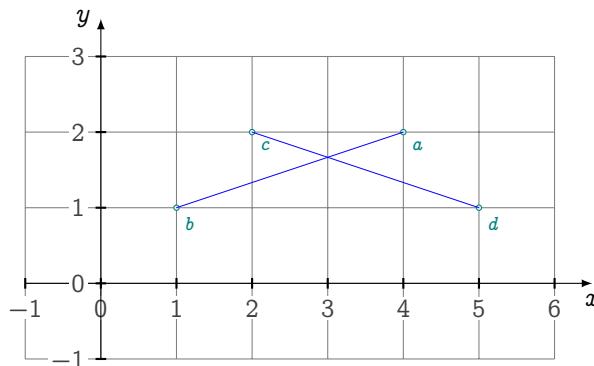
Sometimes it's useful to transfer angle, length measurements or boolean. For this purpose, I have created the macro (refer to 20.6) `tkzUseLua(value)`

```
\begin{tkzelements}
z.b = point: new (1,1)
z.a = point: new (4,2)
z.c = point: new (2,2)
z.d = point: new (5,1)
L.ab = line : new (z.a,z.b)
L.cd = line : new (z.c,z.d)
det = (z.b-z.a)^(z.d-z.c)
if det == 0 then bool = true
else bool = false
end
x = intersection (L.ab,L.cd)
\end{tkzelements}
```

The intersection of the two lines lies at
a point whose affix is: \tkzUseLua{x}

```
\begin{tikzpicture}
\tkzGetNodes
\tkzInit[xmin=-1,ymin=-1,xmax=6,ymax=3]
\tkzGrid\tkzAxeX\tkzAxeY
\tkzDrawPoints(a,...,d)
\ifthenelse{\equal{\tkzUseLua{bool}}{true}}{
\tkzDrawSegments[red](a,b c,d){%
\tkzDrawSegments[blue](a,b c,d)}
\tkzLabelPoints(a,...,d)
\end{tikzpicture}
```

The intersection of the two lines lies at a point whose affix is: $3+1.67i$



7 Class and object

7.1 Class

Object-oriented programming (OOP) is a programming model based on the concept of objects. An object can be defined as a data table that has unique attributes and methods (operations) that define its behavior.

A class is essentially a user-defined data type. It describes the contents of the objects that belong to it. A class serves as a blueprint for creating objects, providing initial values for attributes and implementations of methods⁵ that are common to all objects of a certain kind.

7.2 Object

An Object is an instance of a class. Each object contains attributes and methods. Attributes are information or object characteristics of the object stored in the data table (called fields), while methods define the object's behavior.

All objects in the package are typed. The object types currently defined and used are: `point`, `line`, `circle`, `triangle`, `ellipse`, `quadrilateral`, `square`, `rectangle`, `parallelogram` and `regular_polygon`.

These objects can be created directly using the method `new` by giving points, with the exception of the `classpoint` class which requires a pair of reals, and `classregular_polygon` which needs two points and an integer.

Objects can also be obtained by applying methods to other objects. For example, `T.ABC : circum_circle ()` creates an object `circle`. Some object attributes are also objects themselves, such as `T.ABC.bc` which creates the `line` object, representing a straight line passing through the last two points defining the triangle.

7.2.1 Attributes

Attributes are accessed using the classic method, so `T.pc` retrieves the third point of the triangle and `C.OH.center` retrieves the center of the circle. Additionally, I've added a `get_points` function that returns the points of an object. This function applies to straight lines (`pa` and `pc`), triangles (`pa`, `pb` and `pc`) and circles (center and through).

Example: `z.O,z.T = get_points (C)` retrieves the center and a point of the circle.

7.2.2 Methods

A method is an operation (function or procedure) associated (linked) with an object.

Example: The point object is used to vertically determine a new point object located at a certain distance from it (here 2). Then it is possible to rotate objects around it.

```
\begin{tkzelements}
z.A = point (1,0)
z.B = z.A : north (2)
z.C = z.A : rotation (math.pi/3,z.B)
tex.print(tostring(z.C))
\end{tkzelements}
```

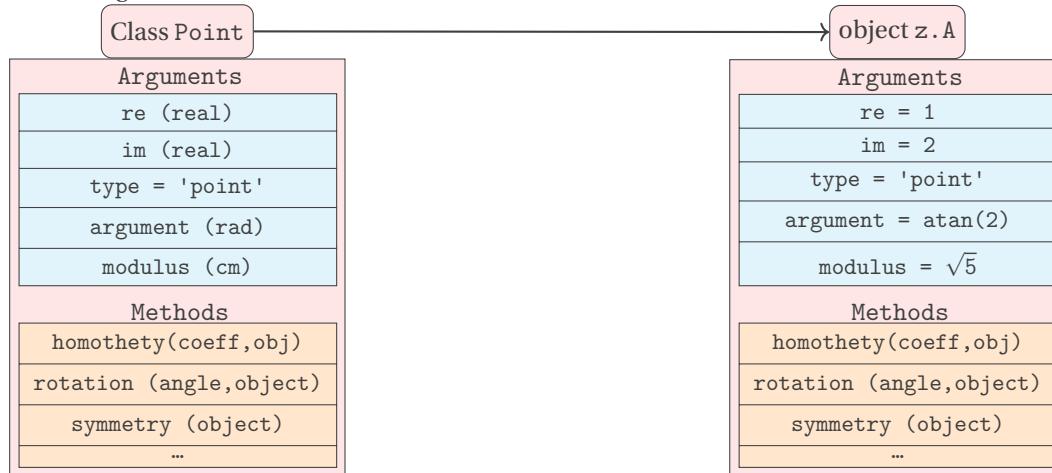
The coordinates of C are: -0.73205080756888 and 1.0

⁵ action which an object is able to perform.

8 Class point

The foundation of the entire framework is the point class. This class is hybrid in the sense that it deals with both points in a plane and complex numbers. The principle is as follows: the plane is equipped with an orthonormal basis, which allows us to determine the position of a point using its abscissa and ordinate coordinate. Similarly, any complex number can be viewed simply as a pair of real numbers (its real part and its imaginary part). We can then designate the plane as the complex plane, and the complex number $x + iy$ is represented by the point of the plane with coordinates (x, y) . Thus the point A will have coordinates stored in the object $z.A$. Coordinates are attributes of the "point" object, along with type, argument, and modulus.

The creation of a point is done using the following method, but there are other possibilities. If a scaling factor has been given, the method takes it into account.



8.1 Attributes of a point

Creation $z.A = \text{point} (1,2)$

The point A has coordinates $x = 1$ and $y = 2$. If you use the notation $z.A$, then A will be referenced as a node in TikZ or in tkz-euclide.

This is the creation of a fixed point with coordinates 1 and 2 and which is named A . The notation $z.A$ indicates that the coordinates will be stored in a table denoted as z (reference to the notation of the affixes of the complex numbers) that A is the name of the point and the key allowing access to the values.

Table 1: Point attributes.

Attributes	Application	Example
re	$z.A.\text{re} = 1$	Refer to (7.2.2)
im	$z.A.\text{im} = 2$	Refer to (7.2.2)
type	$z.A.\text{type} = \text{'point'}$	
argument	$z.A.\text{argument} \approx 0.78539816339745$	Refer to (8.1.1)
modulus	$z.A.\text{modulus} \approx 2.23606797749979 = \sqrt{5}$	Refer to (8.1.1)

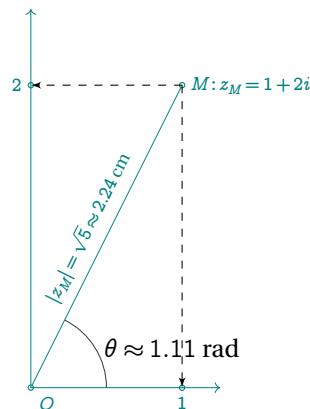
8.1.1 Example: point attributes

```
\begin{tkzelements}
z.M = point: new (1,2)
\end{tkzelements}

\begin{tikzpicture}[scale = 1]
\pgfkeys{/pgf/number format/.cd,std,precision=2}
\let\pmpn\pgfmathprintnumber
\tkzDefPoints{2/4/M,2/Q/A,Q/Q/O,Q/4/B}
\tkzLabelPoints(O)
\tkzMarkAngle[fill=gray!30, size=1](A,O,M)
\tkzLabelAngle[pos=1,right](A,O,M){%
$\theta \approx \pmpn{\tkzUseLua{z.M.argument}}$ rad}
\tkzDrawSegments(O,M)
\tkzLabelSegment[above,sloped](O,M){%
$|z_M| = \sqrt{5} \approx \pmpn{\tkzUseLua{z.M.modulus}}$ cm}
\tkzLabelPoint[right](M){$M: z_M = 1 + 2i$}
\tkzDrawPoints(M,A,O,B)
\tkzPointShowCoord(M)
\tkzLabelPoint[below,teal](A){$\tkzUseLua{z.M.re}$}
\tkzLabelPoint[left,teal](B){$\tkzUseLua{z.M.im}$}
\tkzDrawSegments[->,add = 0 and 0.25](O,B O,A)
\end{tikzpicture}
```

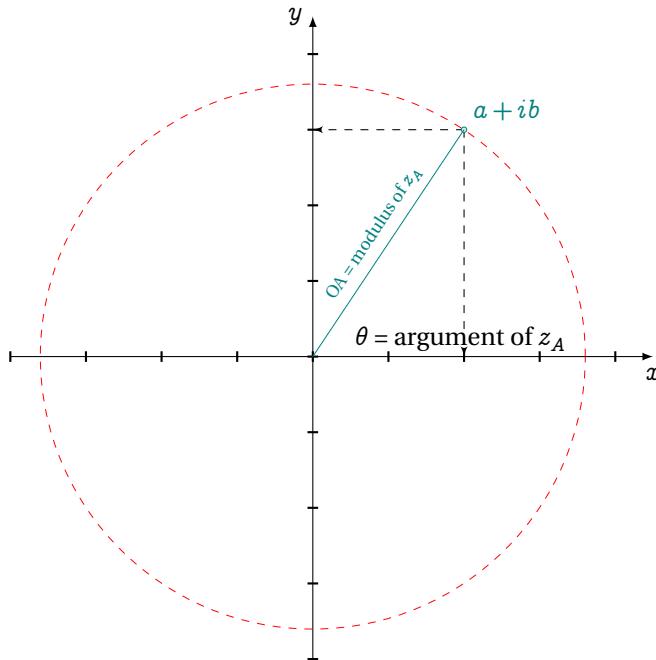
Attributes of $z.M$

- $z.M.re = 1$
- $z.M.im = 2$
- $z.M.type = 'point'$
- $z.M.argument = \theta \approx 1.11 \text{ rad}$
- $z.M.modulus = |z_M| = \sqrt{5} \approx 2.24 \text{ cm}$



8.1.2 Argand diagram

```
\begin{tkzelements}
z.A = point : new ( 2 , 3 )
z.O = point : new ( 0 , 0 )
z.I = point : new ( 1 , 0 )
\end{tkzelements}
\hspace{\fill}\begin{tikzpicture}
\tkzGetNodes
\tkzInit[xmin=-4,ymin=-4,xmax=4,ymax=4]
\tkzDrawCircle[dashed,red](O,A)
\tkzPointShowCoord(A)
\tkzDrawPoint(A)
\tkzLabelPoint[above right](A){\normalsize $a+ib$}
\tkzDrawX\tkzDrawY
\tkzDrawSegment(O,A)
\tkzLabelSegment[above,anchor=south,sloped](O,A){ OA = modulus of $z_A$}
\tkzLabelAngle[anchor=west,pos=.5](I,O,A){$\theta$ = argument of $z_A$}
\end{tikzpicture}
```



8.2 Methods of the class point

The methods described in the following table are standard and can be found in most of the examples at the end of this documentation. The result of the different methods presented in the following table is a **point**. Refer to section (22.3) for the metamethods.

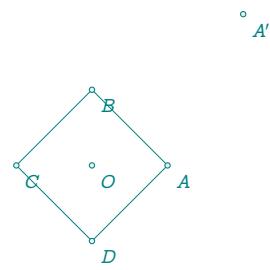
Table 2: Functions & Methods of the class point.

Functions	Application	
new(r,r)	$z.A = \text{point} : \text{new}(1,2)$	Refer to (8.2.4)
polar (d,an)	$z.A = \text{point} : \text{polar}(1,\text{math.pi}/3)$	Refer to (23.7)
polar_deg (d,an)	an in deg	polar coordinates an deg
Methods	Application	
Points		
north(r)	r distance to the point (1 if empty)	Refer to (23.43) ; 7.2.2
south(r)		
east(r)		
west(r)		
normalize()	$z.b = z.a : \text{normalize} ()$	Refer to (8.2.4)
get_points (obj)	retrieves points from the object	
orthogonal (d)	$z.B=z.A:\text{orthogonal}(d)$	$\overrightarrow{OB} \perp \overrightarrow{OA}$ and $OB = d$
at ()	$z.X = z.B : \text{at} (z.A)$	$\overrightarrow{OB} = \overrightarrow{AX}$ and $OB = d$
Transformations		
symmetry(obj)	obj : point, line, etc.	Refer to (8.2.9)
rotation(an , obj)	point, line, etc.	Refer to (8.2.8)
homothety(r,obj)	$z.c = z.a : \text{homothety} (2,z.b)$	Refer to (23.48)
Misc.		
print()	displays the affix of the point	Refer to (8.2.9)

8.2.1 Example: method north (d)

This function defines a point located on a vertical line passing through the given point. This function is useful if you want to report a certain distance (Refer to the following example). If d is absent then it is considered equal to 1.

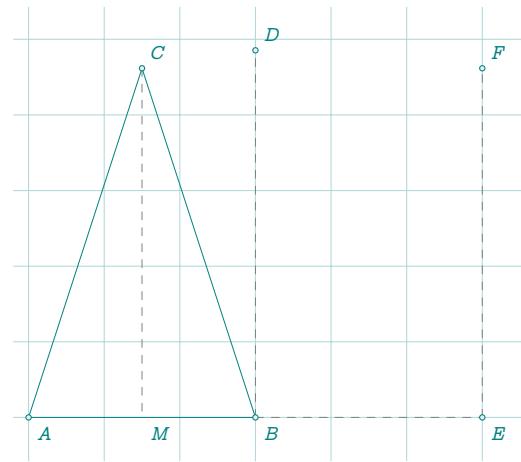
```
\begin{tkzelements}
z.O = point : new ( 0, 0 )
z.A = z.O : east ()
z.Ap = z.O : east (2) : north (2)
z.B = z.O : north ()
z.C = z.O : west ()
z.D = z.O : south ()
\end{tkzelements}
\begin{tikzpicture}
\tkzGetNodes
\tkzDrawPolygon(A,B,C,D)
\tkzDrawPoints(A,B,C,D,O,A')
\end{tikzpicture}
```



8.2.2 Length transfer

Use of north and east functions linked to points, to transfer lengths, Refer to (20.1)

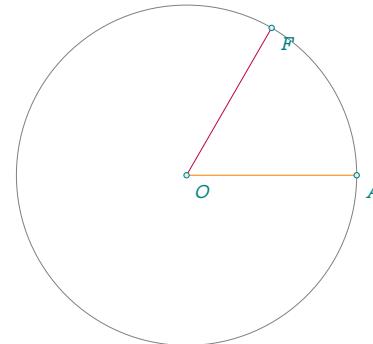
```
\begin{tkzelements}
z.A = point : new ( 0 , 0 )
z.B = point : new ( 3 , 0 )
L.AB = line : new ( z.A , z.B )
T.ABC = L.AB : sublime ()
z.C = T.ABC.pc
z.D = z.B: north (length(z.B,z.C))
z.E = z.B: east (L.AB.length)
z.M = L.AB.mid
z.F = z.E : north (length(z.C,z.M))
\end{tkzelements}
\begin{tikzpicture}[gridded]
\tkzGetNodes
\tkzDrawPolygons(A,B,C)
\tkzDrawSegments[gray,dashed](B,D B,E E,F C,M)
\tkzDrawPoints(A,...,F)
\tkzLabelPoints(A,B,E,M)
\tkzLabelPoints[above right](C,D,F)
\end{tikzpicture}
```



8.2.3 Example: method polar

This involves defining a point using its modulus and argument.

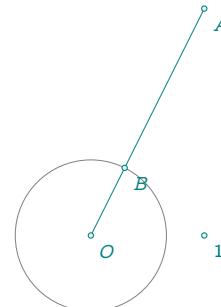
```
\begin{tkzelements}
z.O      = point: new (0, 0)
z.A      = point: new (3, 0)
z.F      = point: polar (3, math.pi/3)
\end{tkzelements}
\begin{tikzpicture}
\tkzGetNodes
\tkzDrawCircle(O,A)
\tkzDrawSegments[new](O,A)
\tkzDrawSegments[purple](O,F)
\tkzDrawPoints(A,O,F)
\tkzLabelPoints(A,O,F)
\end{tikzpicture}
```



8.2.4 Method normalize ()

The result is a point located between the origin and the initial point at a distance of 1 from the origin.

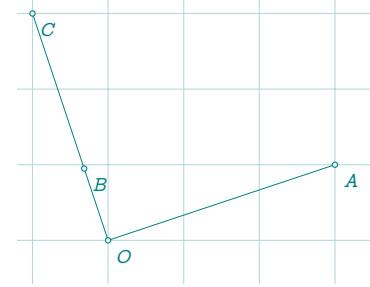
```
\begin{tkzelements}
scale = 1.5
z.O = point : new (0,0)
z.A = point : new (1,2)
z.B = z.A : normalize ()
z.I = point : new (1,0)
\end{tkzelements}
\begin{tikzpicture}
\tkzGetNodes
\tkzDrawSegment(O,A)
\tkzDrawCircle(O,B)
\tkzDrawPoints(O,A,B,I)
\tkzLabelPoints(O,A,B)
\tkzLabelPoint[below right](I){$1$}
\end{tikzpicture}
```



8.2.5 Orthogonal (d) method

Let O be the origin of the plane. The "orthogonal (d)" method is used to obtain a point B from a point A such that $\overrightarrow{OB} \perp \overrightarrow{OA}$ with $OB = OA$ if d is empty, otherwise $OB = d$.

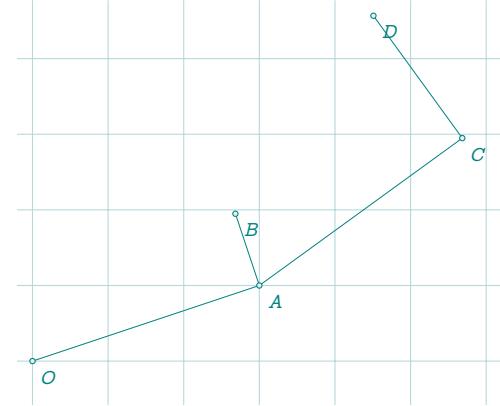
```
\begin{tkzelements}
z.A = point : new ( 3 , 1 )
z.B = z.A : orthogonal (1)
z.O = point : new ( 0,0 )
z.C = z.A : orthogonal ()
\end{tkzelements}
\begin{tikzpicture}[gridded]
\tkzGetNodes
\tkzDrawSegments(O,A O,C)
\tkzDrawPoints(O,A,B,C)
\tkzLabelPoints[below right](O,A,B,C)
\end{tikzpicture}
```



8.2.6 at method

This method is complementary to the previous one, so you may not wish to have $\overrightarrow{OB} \perp \overrightarrow{OA}$ but $\overrightarrow{AB} \perp \overrightarrow{OA}$.

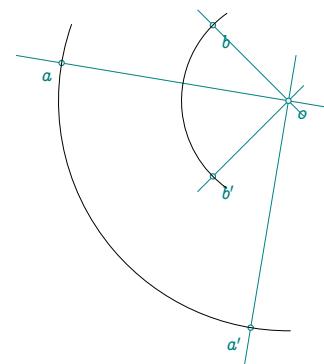
```
\begin{tkzelements}
z.A = point : new ( 3 , 1 )
z.B = z.A : orthogonal (1)
z.O = point : new ( 0,0 )
-- z.B = z.B : at (z.A) -- or
z.B = z.A : orthogonal (1) : at (z.A)
z.C = z.A+z.B
z.D =(z.C-z.A):orthogonal(2) : at (z.C)
\end{tkzelements}
\begin{tikzpicture}[gridded]
\tkzGetNodes
\tkzLabelPoints[below right](O,A,B,C,D)
\tkzDrawSegments(O,A A,B A,C C,D)
\tkzDrawPoints(O,A,B,C,D)
\end{tikzpicture}
```



8.2.7 Example: rotation of points

The arguments are the angle of rotation in radians, and here a list of points.

```
\begin{tkzelements}
z.a      = point: new(0, -1)
z.b      = point: new(4, 0)
z.o      = point: new(6, -2)
z.ap,z.bp = z.o : rotation (math.pi/2,z.a,z.b)
\end{tkzelements}
\begin{tikzpicture}
\tkzGetNodes
\tkzDrawLines(o,a o,a' o,b o,b')
\tkzDrawPoints(a,a',b,b',o)
\tkzLabelPoints(b,b',o)
\tkzLabelPoints[below left](a,a')
\tkzDrawArc(o,a)(a')
\tkzDrawArc(o,b)(b')
\end{tikzpicture}
```



8.2.8 Object rotation

Rotate a triangle by an angle of $\pi/6$ around O .

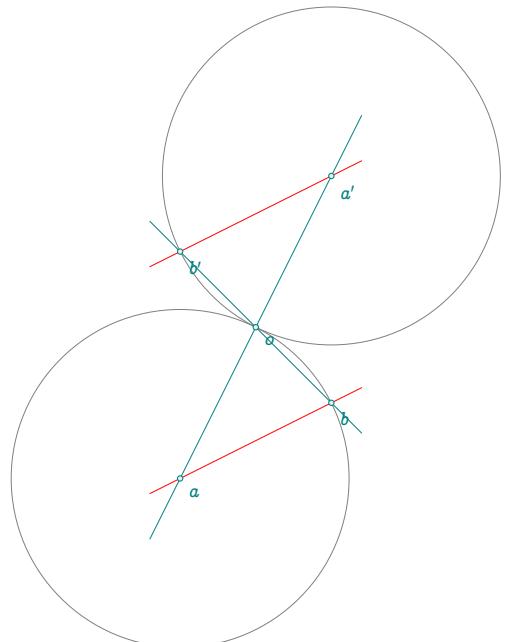
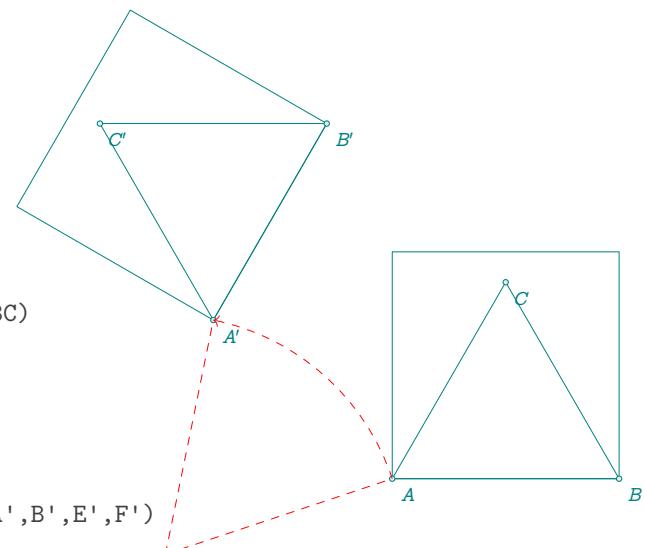
```
\begin{tkzelements}
z.O = point : new ( -1 , -1 )
z.A = point : new ( 2 , 0 )
z.B = point : new ( 5 , 0 )
L.AB = line : new (z.A,z.B)
T.ABC = L.AB : equilateral ()
S.fig = L.AB : square ()
_,_,z.E,z.F = get_points ( S.fig )
S.new = z.O : rotation (math.pi/3,S.fig)
_,_,z.Ep,z.Fp = get_points ( S.new )
z.C = T.ABC.pc
T.ApBpCp = z.O : rotation (math.pi/3,T.ABC)
z.Ap,z.Bp,z.Cp = get_points ( T.ApBpCp )
\end{tkzelements}
```

```
\begin{tikzpicture}
\tkzGetNodes
\tkzDrawPolygons(A,B,C A',B',C' A,B,E,F A',B',E',F')
\tkzDrawPoints (A,B,C,A',B',C',O)
\tkzLabelPoints (A,B,C,A',B',C',O)
\tkzDrawArc[delta=0,->](O,A)(A')
\end{tikzpicture}
```

8.2.9 Object symmetry

```
\begin{tkzelements}
z.a = point: new(0,-1)
z.b = point: new(2, 0)
L.ab = line : new (z.a,z.b)
C.ab = circle : new (z.a,z.b)
z.o = point: new(1,1)
z.ap,z.bp = get_points (z.o: symmetry (C.ab))
\end{tkzelements}
```

```
\begin{tikzpicture}
\tkzGetNodes
\tkzDrawCircles(a,b a',b')
\tkzDrawLines(a,a' b,b')
\tkzDrawLines[red](a,b a',b')
\tkzDrawPoints(a,a',b,b',o)
\tkzLabelPoints(a,a',b,b',o)
\end{tikzpicture}
```



9 Class line

9.1 Attributes of a line

Writing `L.AB = line: new (z.A,z.B)` creates an object of the class `line` (the notation is arbitrary for the moment). Geometrically, it represents both the line passing through the points A and B as the segment $[AB]$. Thus, we can use the midpoint of $L.AB$, which is, of course, the midpoint of the segment $[AB]$. This medium is obtained with `L.AB.mid`. Note that `L.AB.pa = z.A` and `L.AB.pb = z.B`. Finally, if a line L is the result of a method, you can obtain the points with `z.A,z.B = get_points (L)` or with the previous remark.

```
Creation L.AB = line : new ( z.A , z.B )
```

The attributes are :

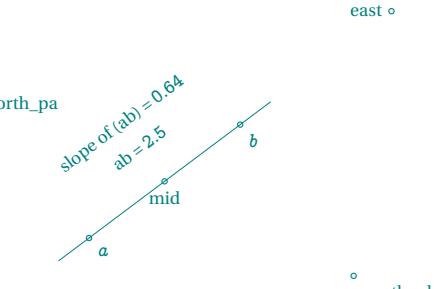
Table 3: Line attributes.

Attributes	Application
pa	First point of the segment <code>z.A = L.AB.pa</code>
pb	Second point of the segment
type	Type is 'line' <code>L.AB.type = 'line'</code>
mid	Middle of the segment <code>z.M = L.AB.mid</code>
slope	Slope of the line Refer to (9.1.1)
length	<code>l = L.AB.length</code> Refer to (20.6 ; 9.1.1)
north_pa	Refer to (9.1.1)
north_pb	
south_pa	
south_pb	Refer to (9.1.1)
east	
west	
vec	<code>V.AB = L.AB.vec</code> defines \overrightarrow{AB} Refer to (18)

9.1.1 Example: attributes of class line

```
\begin{tkzelements}
scale  = .5
z.a    = point: new (1, 1)
z.b    = point: new (5, 4)
L.ab   = line : new (z.a,z.b)
z.m    = L.ab.mid
z.w    = L.ab.west
z.e    = L.ab.east
z.r    = L.ab.north_pa
z.s    = L.ab.south_pb
sl    = L.ab.slope
len   = L.ab.length
\end{tkzelements}
```

```
\begin{tikzpicture}
\tkzGetNodes
\tkzDrawPoints(a,b,m,e,r,s,w)
\tkzLabelPoints(a,b,e,r,s,w)
\tkzLabelPoints[above](m)
\tkzDrawLine(a,b)
\tkzLabelSegment[sloped](a,b){ab = \tkzUseLua{len}}
\tkzLabelSegment[above=12pt,sloped](a,b){slope of (ab) = \tkzUseLua{sl}}
\end{tikzpicture}
```

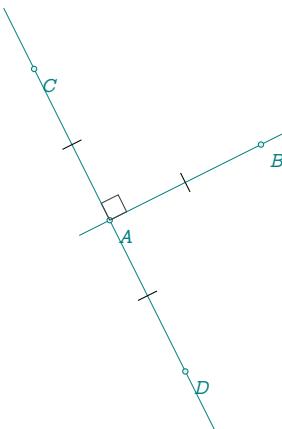


9.1.2 Method new and line attributes

The notation can be L or L.AB or L.euler. The notation is actually free. L.AB can also represent the segment.

With L.AB = line : new (z.A,z.B), a line is defined.

```
\begin{tkzelements}
z.A    = point : new (1,1)
z.B    = point : new (3,2)
L.AB   = line : new (z.A,z.B)
z.C    = L.AB.north_pa
z.D    = L.AB.south_pa
\end{tkzelements}
\begin{tikzpicture}
\tkzGetNodes
\tkzDrawLines(A,B C,D)
\tkzDrawPoints(A,...,D)
\tkzLabelPoints(A,...,D)
\tkzMarkRightAngle(B,A,C)
\tkzMarkSegments(A,C A,B A,D)
\end{tikzpicture}
```



9.2 Methods of the class line

Here's the list of methods for the `line` object. The results can be real numbers, points, lines, circles or triangles. The triangles obtained are similar to the triangles defined below.

Table 4: Methods of the class line.(part 1)

Methods	Comments
<code>new(pt, pt)</code>	<code>L.AB = line : new(z.A,z.B)</code> Create line (AB) ; Refer to (10.2.1)
Points	
<code>gold_ratio ()</code>	<code>z.C=L.AB : gold_ratio()</code> Refer to (23.21 ; 3.3 ; 23.8)
<code>normalize ()</code>	<code>z.C=L.AB : normalize()</code> $AC=1$ and $C \in (AB)$ Refer to (9.2.7)
<code>normalize_inv ()</code>	<code>z.C=L.AB : normalize_inv()</code> $CB=1$ and $C \in (AB)$
<code>barycenter (r,r)</code>	<code>z.C=L.AB : barycenter (1,2)</code> Refer to (9.2.8)
<code>point (r)</code>	<code>z.C=L.AB : point (2)</code> $\overrightarrow{AC}=2\overrightarrow{AB}$ Refer to (23.14 ; 9.2.6)
<code>midpoint ()</code>	<code>z.M=L.AB : midpoint ()</code> better is $z.M = L.AB.mid$
<code>harmonic_int (pt)</code>	<code>z.D=L.AB : harmonic_int (z.C)</code> Refer to (23.8)
<code>harmonic_ext (pt)</code>	<code>z.D=L.AB : harmonic_ext (z.C)</code> Refer to (23.8)
<code>harmonic_both (r)</code>	<code>z.C,z.D=L.AB : harmonic_both(φ)</code> 20.2
<code>_east(d)</code>	<code>z.M=L.AB : _east(2)</code> $BM = 2A, B, M$ aligned
<code>_west(d)</code>	<code>z.M=L.AB : _east(2)</code> $BM = 2A, B, M$ aligned
<code>_north_pa(d)</code>	<code>z.M=L.AB: _north_pa(2)</code> $AM=2 AM \perp AB; \overrightarrow{AB}, \overrightarrow{AM}$ counterclockwise
<code>_south_pa(d)</code>	<code>z.M=L.AB: _south_pa(2)</code> $AM=2; AM \perp AB; \overrightarrow{AB}, \overrightarrow{AM}$ clockwise
<code>_north_pb(d)</code>	<code>z.M=L.AB: _north_pb(2)</code> $BM=2; BM \perp BA; \overrightarrow{BA}, \overrightarrow{BM}$ clockwise
<code>_south_pb(d)</code>	<code>z.M=L.AB: _south_pb(2)</code> $BM=2; BM \perp BA; \overrightarrow{AB}, \overrightarrow{AM}$ counterclockwise
<code>report(d,pt)</code>	<code>z.M=L.AB:report(2,z.N)</code> $MN=2; AB \parallel MN$; Refer to ex. (9.2.1)
Lines	
<code>ll_from (pt)</code>	<code>L.CD=L.AB: ll_from(z.C)</code> $(CD) \parallel (AB)$
<code>ortho_from (pt)</code>	<code>L.CD=L.AB: ortho_from(z.C)</code> $(CD) \perp (AB)$
<code>mediator ()</code>	<code>L.uv=L.AB: mediator()</code> (u,v) mediator of (A,B)
Triangles	
<code>equilateral (<swap>)</code>	<code>T.ABC=L.AB:equilateral()</code> $(\overrightarrow{AB}, \overrightarrow{AC}) > 0$ or < 0 with swap ^a
<code>isosceles (an<,swap>)</code>	<code>T.ABC=L.AB:isosceles(math.pi/6)</code>
<code>two_angles (an,an)</code>	<code>T.ABC=L.AB:two_angles(an,an)</code> note ^b Refer to (9.2.2)
<code>school ()</code>	$30^\circ, 60^\circ, 90^\circ$
<code>sss (r,r)</code>	$AC = r BC = r$
<code>as (r,an)</code>	$AC = r \widehat{BAC} = an$
<code>sa (r,an)</code>	$AC = r \widehat{ABC} = an$
Sacred triangles	
<code>gold (<swap>)</code>	<code>T.ABC=L.AB:gold()</code> right in B and $AC = \varphi \times AB$
<code>euclide (<swap>)</code>	<code>T.ABC=L.AB:euclide()</code> $AB = AC; (\overrightarrow{AB}, \overrightarrow{AC}) = \pi/5$
<code>golden (<swap>)</code>	<code>T.ABC=L.AB:golden()</code> $(\overrightarrow{AB}, \overrightarrow{AC}) = 2 \times \pi/5$
<code>divine ()</code>	
<code>egyptian ()</code>	
<code>cheops ()</code>	
Squares	
<code>square ()</code>	<code>S.AB=L.AB : square ()</code> create a square $S.AB$. ^c

^a Triangles are defined in the direct sense of rotation, unless the "swap" option is present.

^b The given side is between the two angles

^c `_,_,z.C,z.D = get_points(S.AB)`

Table 5: Methods of the class line.(part 2)

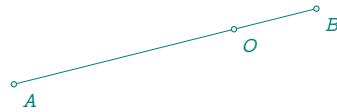
Methods	Comments
Circles	
circle ()	C.AB = L.AB : circle ()
circle_swap ()	C.BA = L.AB : circle_swap ()
apollonius (r)	C.apo = L.AB : apollonius (2)
Transformations	
reflection (obj)	new obj = L.AB : reflection (obj)
translation (obj)	new obj = L.AB : translation (obj)
projection (obj)	z.H = L.AB : projection (z.C) $CH \perp (AB)$ and $H \in (AB)$
Miscellaneous	
distance (pt)	d = L.Ab : distance (z.C)
in_out (pt)	b = L.AB: in_out(z.C)
slope ()	a = L.AB : slope()
in_out_segment (pt)	b = L.AB : in_out_segment(z.C)

9.2.1 Method report

report (d,pt) If the point is absent, the transfer is made from the first point that defines the line.
 \backslash begin{tkzelements}

```

z.A = point : new (1,-1)
z.B = point : new (5,0)
L.AB = line : new ( z.A , z.B )
z.M = point : new (2,3)
z.N = L.AB : report (3,z.M)
z.O = L.AB : report (3)
\end{tkzelements}
\begin{tikzpicture}
\tkzGetNodes
\tkzDrawSegments(A,B M,N)
\tkzDrawPoints(A,B,M,N,O)
\tkzLabelPoints(A,B,M,N,O)
\end{tikzpicture}
```

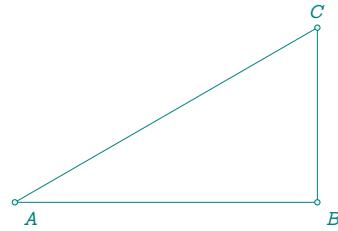


9.2.2 Triangle with two_angles

The angles are on either side of the given segment

```

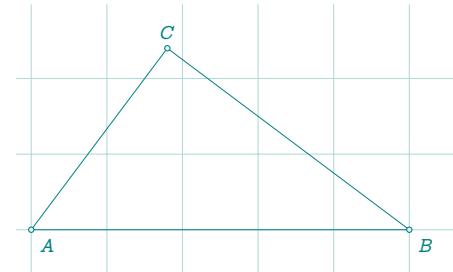
\begin{tkzelements}
z.A = point : new ( 0 , 0 )
z.B = point : new ( 4 , 0 )
L.AB = line : new ( z.A , z.B )
T.ABC = L.AB : two_angles (math.pi/6,math.pi/2)
z.C = T.ABC.pc
\end{tkzelements}
\begin{tikzpicture}
\tkzGetNodes
\tkzDrawPolygons(A,B,C)
\tkzDrawPoints(A,B,C)
\tkzLabelPoints(A,B)
\tkzLabelPoints[above](C)
\end{tikzpicture}
```



9.2.3 Triangle with three given sides

In the following example, a small difficulty arises. The given lengths are not affected by scaling, so it's necessary to use the value (r) function, which will modify the lengths according to the scale.

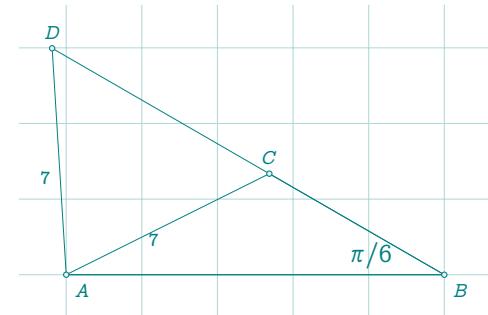
```
\begin{tkzelements}
z.A = point : new ( 0 , 0 )
z.B = point : new ( 5 , 0 )
L.AB = line : new ( z.A , z.B )
T.ABC = L.AB : sss (value(3),value(4))
z.C = T.ABC.pc
\end{tkzelements}
\begin{tikzpicture}[gridded]
\tkzGetNodes
\tkzDrawPolygons(A,B,C)
\tkzDrawPoints(A,B,C)
\tkzLabelPoints(A,B)
\tkzLabelPoints[above](C)
\end{tikzpicture}
```



9.2.4 Triangle with side between side and angle

In some cases, two solutions are possible.

```
\begin{tkzelements}
scale =1
z.A = point : new ( 0 , 0 )
z.B = point : new ( 5 , 0 )
L.AB = line : new ( z.A , z.B )
T.ABC,T.ABD = L.AB : ssa (value(3),math.pi/6)
z.C = T.ABC.pc
z.D = T.ABD.pc
\end{tkzelements}
\begin{tikzpicture}[gridded]
\tkzGetNodes
\tkzDrawPolygons(A,B,C A,B,D)
\tkzDrawPoints(A,B,C,D)
\tkzLabelPoints(A,B)
\tkzLabelPoints[above](C,D)
\tkzLabelAngle[teal](C,B,A){$\pi/6$}
\tkzLabelSegment[below left](A,C){$7$}
\tkzLabelSegment[below left](A,D){$7$}
\end{tikzpicture}
```



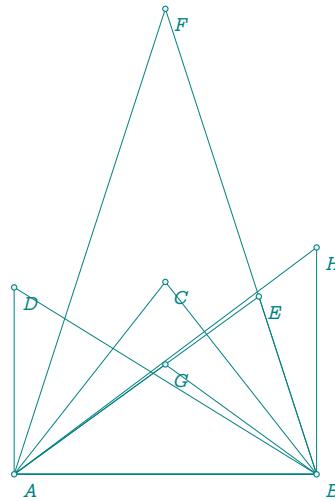
9.2.5 About sacred triangles

The side lengths are proportional to the lengths given in the table. They depend on the length of the initial segment.

Table 6: Sacred triangles.

Name	definition
gold (<swap>)	Right triangle with $a = \varphi$, $b = 1$ and $c = \sqrt{\varphi}$
golden (<swap>)	Right triangle $b = \varphi c = 1$; half of gold rectangle
divine ()	Isosceles $a = \varphi$, $b = c = 1$ and $\beta = \gamma = \pi/5$
pythagoras ()	$a = 5$, $b = 4$, $c = 3$ and other names: isis or egyptian
sublime ()	Isosceles $a = 1$, $b = c = \varphi$ and $\beta = \gamma = 2\pi/5$; other name: euclid
cheops ()	Isosceles $a = 2$, $b = c = \varphi$ and height = $\sqrt{\varphi}$

```
\begin{tkzelements}
z.A = point : new ( Q , Q )
z.B = point : new ( 4 , Q )
L.AB = line : new ( z.A , z.B )
T.ABC = L.AB : cheops ()
z.C = T.ABC.pc
T.ABD = L.AB : gold ()
z.D = T.ABD.pc
T.ABE = L.AB : euclide ()
z.E = T.ABE.pc
T.ABF = L.AB : golden ()
z.F = T.ABF.pc
T.ABG = L.AB : divine ()
z.G = T.ABG.pc
T.ABH = L.AB : pythagoras ()
z.H = T.ABH.pc
\end{tkzelements}
\begin{tikzpicture}
\tkzGetNodes
\tkzDrawPolygons(A,B,C A,B,D A,B,E A,B,F A,B,G A,B,H)
\tkzDrawPoints(A,...,H)
\tkzLabelPoints(A,...,H)
\end{tikzpicture}
```

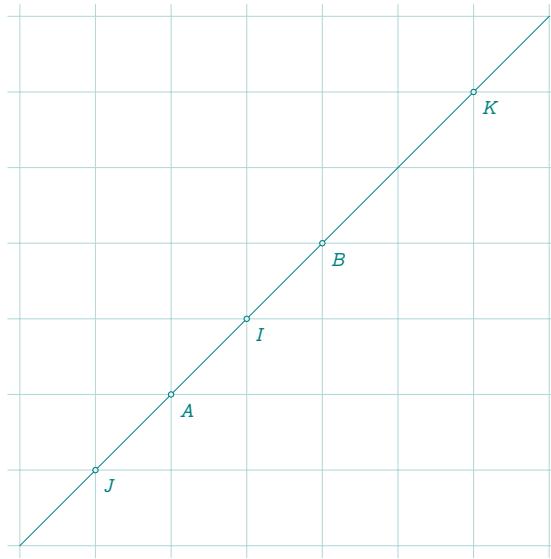


9.2.6 Method point

This method is very useful. It allows you to place a point on the line under consideration. If $r = Q$ then the point is pa, if $r = 1$ it's pb.

If $r = .5$ the point obtained is the midpoint of the segment. r can be negative or greater than 1.
This method exists for all objects except quadrilaterals.

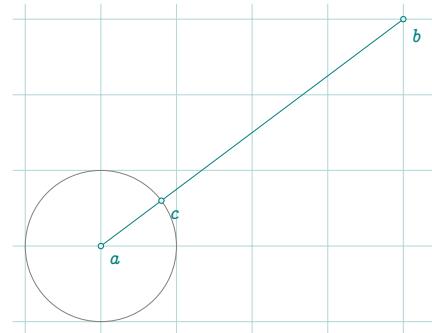
```
\begin{tkzelements}
z.A = point : new (-1,-1)
z.B = point : new (1,1)
L.AB = line : new (z.A,z.B)
z.I = L.AB : point (0.5)
z.J = L.AB : point (-0.5)
z.K = L.AB : point (2)
\end{tkzelements}
\begin{tikzpicture}[gridded]
\tkzGetNodes
\tkzDrawLine(J,K)
\tkzDrawPoints(A,B,I,J,K)
\tkzLabelPoints(A,B,I,J,K)
\end{tikzpicture}
```



9.2.7 Normalize

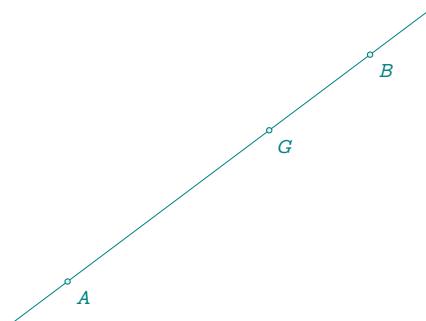
```
\begin{tkzelements}
z.a = point: new (1, 1)
z.b = point: new (5, 4)
L.ab = line : new (z.a,z.b)
z.c = L.ab : normalize ()
\end{tkzelements}

\begin{tikzpicture}[gridded]
\tkzGetNodes
\tkzDrawSegments(a,b)
\tkzDrawCircle(a,c)
\tkzDrawPoints(a,b,c)
\tkzLabelPoints(a,b,c)
\end{tikzpicture}
```



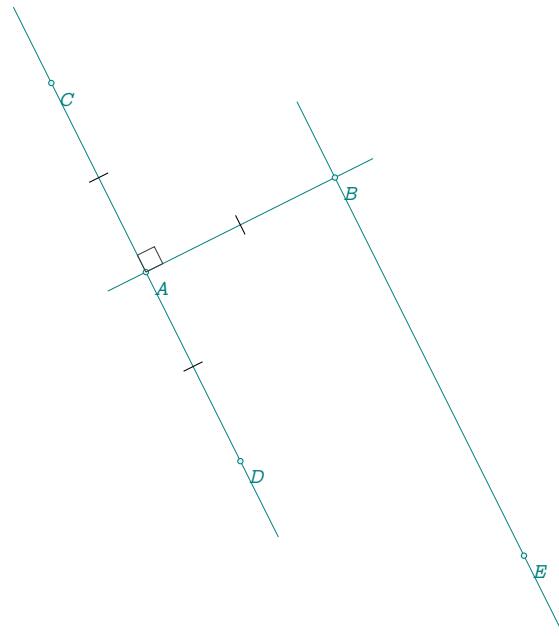
9.2.8 Barycenter with a line

```
\begin{tkzelements}
z.A = point : new ( 0 , -1 )
z.B = point : new ( 4 , 2 )
L.AB = line : new ( z.A , z.B )
z.G = L.AB : barycenter (1,2)
\end{tkzelements}
\begin{tikzpicture}
\tkzGetNodes
\tkzDrawLine(A,B)
\tkzDrawPoints(A,B,G)
\tkzLabelPoints(A,B,G)
\end{tikzpicture}
```



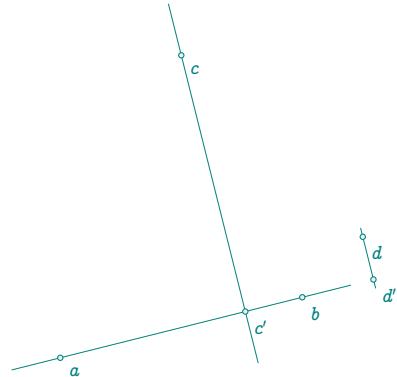
9.2.9 Example: new line from a defined line

```
\begin{tkzelements}
    scale = 1.25
    z.A   = point : new (1,1)
    z.B   = point : new (3,2)
    L.AB  = line : new (z.A,z.B)
    z.C   = L.AB.north_pa
    z.D   = L.AB.south_pa
    L.CD  = line : new (z.C,z.D)
    _,z.E = get_points ( L.CD: ll_from (z.B))
    -- z.E = L2.pb
\end{tkzelements}
\begin{tikzpicture}
    \tkzGetNodes
    \tkzDrawLines(A,B C,D B,E)
    \tkzDrawPoints(A,...,E)
    \tkzLabelPoints(A,...,E)
    \tkzMarkRightAngle(B,A,C)
    \tkzMarkSegments(A,C A,B A,D)
\end{tikzpicture}
```



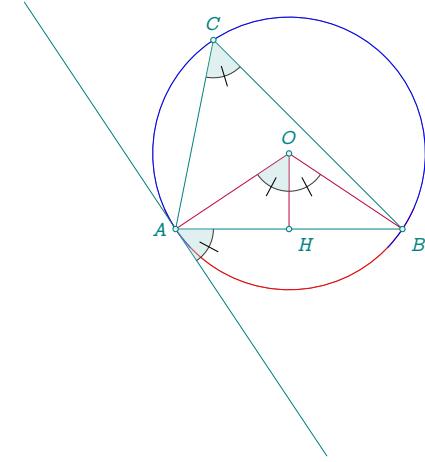
9.2.10 Example: projection of several points

```
\begin{tkzelements}
    scale      = .8
    z.a        = point: new (0, 0)
    z.b        = point: new (4, 1)
    z.c        = point: new (2, 5)
    z.d        = point: new (5, 2)
    L.ab      = line: new (z.a,z.b)
    z.cp,z.dp = L.ab: projection(z.c,z.d)
\end{tkzelements}
\begin{tikzpicture}
    \tkzGetNodes
    \tkzDrawLines(a,b c,c' d,d')
    \tkzDrawPoints(a,...,d,c',d')
    \tkzLabelPoints(a,...,d,c',d')
\end{tikzpicture}
```



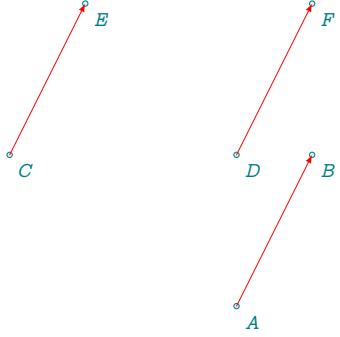
9.2.11 Example: combination of methods

```
\begin{tkzelements}
z.A      = point: new (0 , 0)
z.B      = point: new (6 , 0)
z.C      = point: new (1 , 5)
T.ABC   = triangle: new (z.A,z.B,z.C)
L.AB    = T.ABC.ab
z.O      = T.ABC.circumcenter
C.OA    = circle: new (z.O,z.A)
z.H      = L.AB: projection (z.O)
L.ab    = C.OA: tangent_at (z.A)
z.a,z.b = L.ab.pa,L.ab.pb
-- or z.a,z.b = get_points (L.ab)
\end{tkzelements}
\begin{tikzpicture}
\tkzGetNodes
\tkzDrawPolygon(A,B,C)
\tkzDrawCircle(O,A)
\tkzDrawSegments[purple](O,A O,B O,H)
\tkzDrawArc[red](O,A)(B)
\tkzDrawArc[blue](O,B)(A)
\tkzDrawLine[add = 2 and 1](A,a)
\tkzFillAngles[teal!30,opacity=.4](A,C,B b,A,B A,O,H)
\tkzMarkAngles[mark=|](A,C,B b,A,B A,O,H H,O,B)
\tkzDrawPoints(A,B,C,H,O)
\tkzLabelPoints(B,H)
\tkzLabelPoints[above](O,C)
\tkzLabelPoints[left](A)
\end{tikzpicture}
```



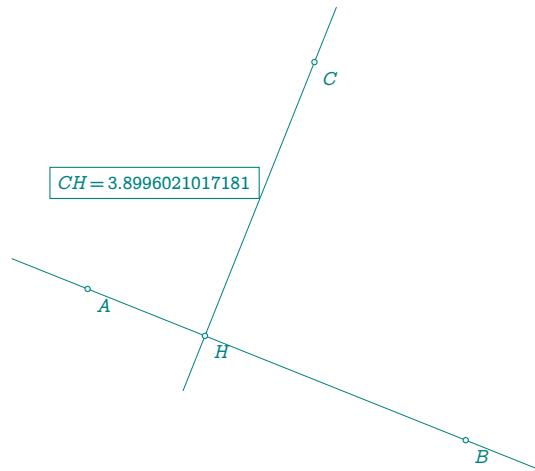
9.2.12 Example: translation

```
\begin{tkzelements}
z.A  = point: new (0,0)
z.B  = point: new (1,2)
z.C  = point: new (-3,2)
z.D  = point: new (0,2)
L.AB = line : new (z.A,z.B)
z.E,z.F = L.AB : translation (z.C,z.D)
\end{tkzelements}
\begin{tikzpicture}
\tkzGetNodes
\tkzDrawPoints(A,...,F)
\tkzLabelPoints(A,...,F)
\tkzDrawSegments[->,red,> = latex](C,E D,F A,B)
\end{tikzpicture}
```



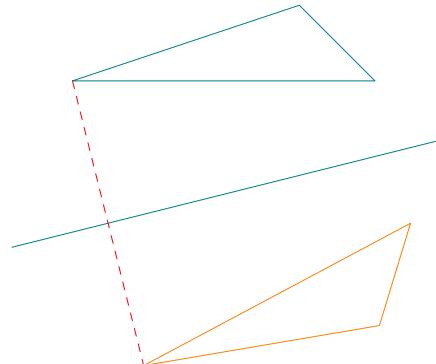
9.2.13 Example: distance and projection

```
\begin{tkzelements}
z.A = point : new (0 , 0)
z.B = point : new (5 , -2)
z.C = point : new (3 , 3)
L.AB = line : new (z.A,z.B)
d = L.AB : distance (z.C)
z.H = L.AB : projection (z.C)
\end{tkzelements}
\begin{tikzpicture}
\tkzGetNodes
\tkzDrawLines(A,B C,H)
\tkzDrawPoints(A,B,C,H)
\tkzLabelPoints(A,B,C,H)
\tkzLabelSegment[above left,
draw](C,H){$CH = \tkzUseLua{d}$}
\end{tikzpicture}
```



9.2.14 Reflection of object

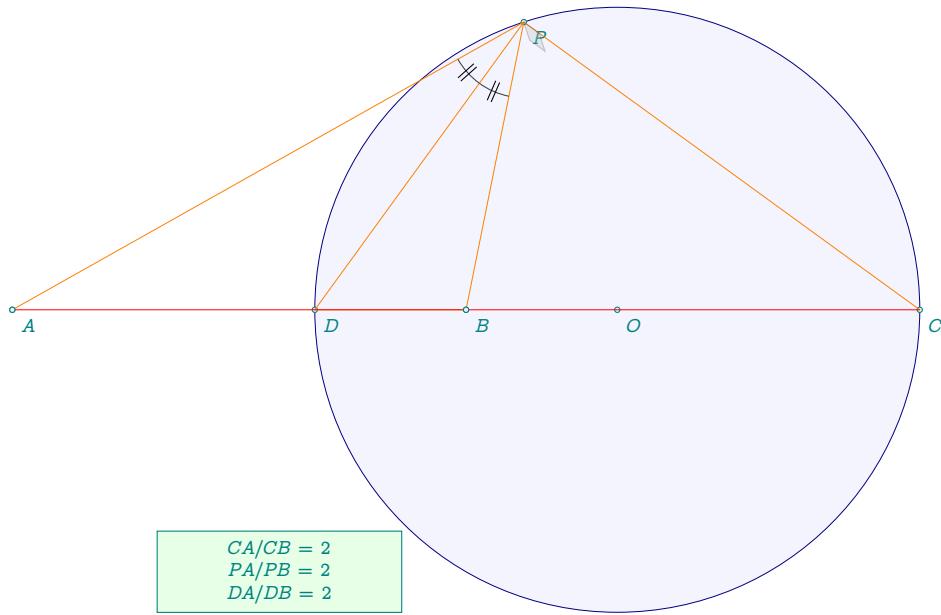
```
\begin{tkzelements}
z.A = point : new ( 0 , 0 )
z.B = point : new ( 4 , 1 )
z.E = point : new ( 0 , 2 )
z.F = point : new ( 3 , 3 )
z.G = point : new ( 4 , 2 )
L.AB = line : new ( z.A , z.B )
T.EFG = triangle : new ( z.E,z.F,z.G )
T.new = L.AB : reflection ( T.EFG )
z.Ep,z.Fp,z.Gp = get_points(T.new)
\end{tkzelements}
\begin{tikzpicture}
\tkzGetNodes
\tkzDrawLine(A,B)
\tkzDrawPolygon(E,F,G)
\tkzDrawPolygon[new](E',F',G')
\tkzDrawSegment[red,dashed](E,E')
\end{tikzpicture}
```



9.3 Apollonius circle $MA/MB = k$

```
\begin{tkzelements}
z.A = point : new ( 0 , 0 )
z.B = point : new ( 6 , 0 )
L.AB = line : new ( z.A,z.B )
C.apo = L.AB : apollonius (2)
z.O,z.C = get_points ( C.apo )
z.D = C.apo : antipode (z.C)
z.P = C.apo : point (0.3Q)
\end{tkzelements}
\begin{tikzpicture}
\tkzGetNodes
\tkzFillCircle[blue!20!, opacity=.2](O,C)
\tkzDrawCircle[blue!50!black](O,C)
```

```
\tkzDrawPoints(A,B,O,C,D,P)
\tkzLabelPoints[below right](A,B,O,C,D,P)
\tkzDrawSegments[orange](P,A P,B P,D B,D P,C)
\tkzDrawSegments[red](A,C)
\tkzDrawPoints(A,B)
\tkzLabelCircle[draw,fill=green!10%,%
    text width=3cm,text centered,left=24pt](O,D)(60)%
    {$CA/CB=2$\$PA/PB=2$\$DA/DB=2\$}
\tkzMarkRightAngle[opacity=.3,fill=lightgray](O,P,C)
\tkzMarkAngles[mark=||](A,P,D D,P,B)
\end{tikzpicture}
```



Remark: \tkzUseLua{length(z.P,z.A)/length(z.P,z.B)} = 2.0

10 Class circle

10.1 Attributes of a circle

This class is defined by two points: the center and a point through which the circle passes

```
Creation C.OA = circle: new (z.0,z.A)
```

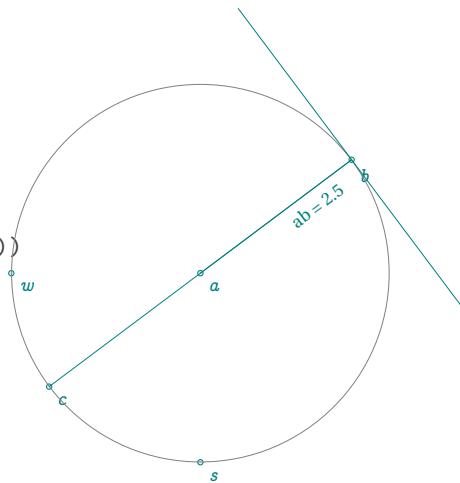
Table 7: Circle attributes.

Attributes	Application
center	$z.A = C.AB.center$
through	$z.B = C.AB.through$
type	$C.OA.type = 'circle'$
radius	$r = C.OA.radius$ r real number
north	$z.N = C.OA.north$
south	$z.S = C.OA.south$
east	$z.E = C.OA.east$
west	$z.W = C.OA.west$
opp	$z.Ap = C.AB.opp$ Refer to (10.1.1)
ct	$L = C.AB.ct$ Refer to (10.1.1)

10.1.1 Example: circle attributes

Three attributes are used (south, west, radius).

```
\begin{tkzelements}
scale = .5
z.a = point: new (1, 1)
z.b = point: new (5, 4)
C.ab = circle : new (z.a,z.b)
z.s = C.ab.south
z.w = C.ab.west
r = C.ab.radius
z.c = C.ab.opp
z.r,z.t = get_points (C.ab.ct : ortho_from (z.b))
\end{tkzelements}
\begin{tikzpicture}
\tkzGetNodes
\tkzDrawPoints(a,b,c,s,w)
\tkzLabelPoints(a,b,c,s,w)
\tkzDrawCircle(a,b)
\tkzDrawSegments(a,b r,t b,c)
\tkzLabelSegment[sloped](a,b){ab = \tkzUseLua{r}}
\end{tikzpicture}
```



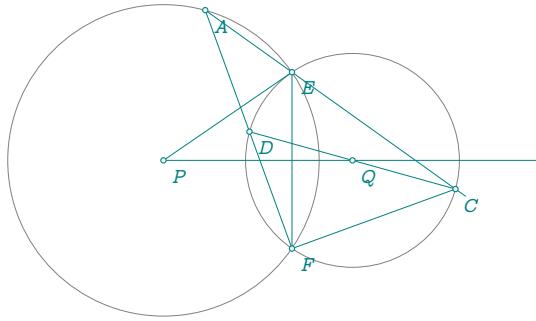
10.2 Methods of the class circle

Table 8: Circle methods.

Methods	Comments	
new(O,A)	C.OA = circle : new (z.O,z.A)	circle center O through A
radius(O,r)	C.OA = circle : radius (z.O,2)	circle center O radius =2 cm
diameter(A,B)	C.OA = circle :diameter(z.A,z.B)	circle diameter $[AB]$
Points		
antipode (pt)	z.C = C.OA: antipode (z.B)	$[BC]$ is a diameter
inversion (pt)	z.Bp = C.AC: inversion (z.B)	
midarc (pt,pt)	z.D = C.AB: midarc (z.B,z.C)	D is the midarc of \widehat{BC}
point (r)	z.E = C.AB: point (Q.25)	r between 0 and 1
random_pt(lower, upper)		
internal_similitude (C)	z.I = C.one : internal_similitude (C.two)	
external_similitude (C)	z.J = C.one : external_similitude (C.two)	
radical_center (C1<,C2>)	or only (C1)	Refer to 23.30
Lines		
radical_axis (C)		Refer to (23.2 ; 23.26 ; 23.27 ; 23.28 ; 23.29)
tangent_at (pt)	z.P = C.OA: tangent_at (z.M)	Refer to (10.2.2 ; 9.2.11)
tangent_from (pt)	z.M,z.N = C.OA: tangent_from (z.P)	Refer to ((iii))
inversion (line)	L or C = C.AC: inversion (L.EF)	Refer to (10.2.5)
common_tangent (C)	z.a,z.b = C.AC: common_tangent (C.EF)	Refer to (10.4 ; 10.5)
Circles		
orthogonal_from (pt)	C = C.OA: orthogonal_from (z.P)	Refer to (10.2.1 ; 10.5 ; 23.36 ; 23.40)
orthogonal_through (pta,ptb)	C = C.OA: orthogonal_through (z.z1,z.z2)	Refer to (23.10)
inversion (...)	C.AC: inversion (pt, pts, L or C)	Refer to 10.2.3, 10.2.4, 10.2.5, 10.2.6
midcircle (C)	C.inv = C.OA: midcircle (C.EF)	Refer to 10.2.7
radical_circle (C1<,C2>)	or only (C1)	Refer to 23.31
Miscellaneous		
power (pt)	p = C.OA: power (z.M)	Refer to (23.42 ; 23.43 ; 23.34)
in_out (pt)	C.OA : in_out (z.M)	Refer to (10.6)
in_out_disk (pt)	C.OA : in_out_disk (z.M)	Refer to (10.6)
draw ()	for further use	
circles_position (C1)	result = string	Refer to (10.3)

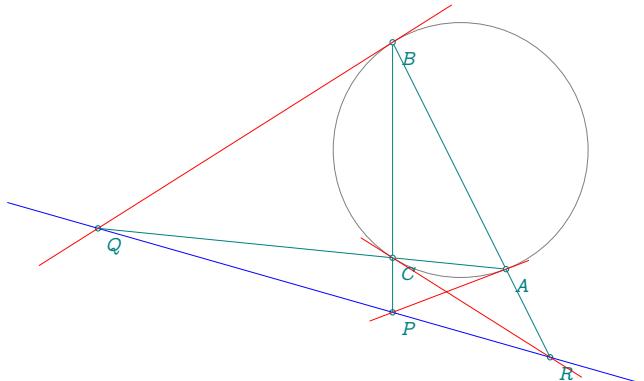
10.2.1 Altshiller

```
\begin{tkzelements}
z.P = point : new (0,0)
z.Q = point : new (5,0)
z.I = point : new (3,2)
C.QI = circle : new (z.Q,z.I)
C.PE = C.QI : orthogonal_from (z.P)
z.E = C.PE.through
C.QE = circle : new (z.Q,z.E)
_,z.F = intersection (C.PE,C.QE)
z.A = C.PE: point (1/9)
L.AE = line : new (z.A,z.E)
_,z.C = intersection (L.AE,C.QE)
L.AF = line : new (z.A,z.F)
L.CQ = line : new (z.C,z.Q)
z.D = intersection (L.AF,L.CQ)
\end{tkzelements}
\begin{tikzpicture}
\tkzGetNodes
\tkzDrawCircles(P,E Q,E)
\tkzDrawLines[add=0 and 1](P,Q)
\tkzDrawLines[add=0 and 2](A,E)
\tkzDrawSegments(P,E E,F F,C A,F C,D)
\tkzDrawPoints(P,Q,E,F,A,C,D)
\tkzLabelPoints(P,Q,E,F,A,C,D)
\end{tikzpicture}
```



10.2.2 Lemoine

```
\begin{tkzelements}
scale = 1.6
z.A = point: new (1,0)
z.B = point: new (5,2)
z.C = point: new (1.2,2)
T = triangle: new(z.A,z.B,z.C)
z.O = T.circumcenter
C.OA = circle: new (z.O,z.A)
L.tA = C.OA: tangent_at (z.A)
L.tB = C.OA: tangent_at (z.B)
L.tC = C.OA: tangent_at (z.C)
z.P = intersection (L.tA,T.bc)
z.Q = intersection (L.tB,T.ca)
z.R = intersection (L.tC,T.ab)
\end{tkzelements}
\begin{tikzpicture}
\tkzGetNodes
\tkzDrawPolygon[teal](A,B,C)
\tkzDrawCircle(O,A)
\tkzDrawPoints(A,B,C,P,Q,R)
\tkzLabelPoints(A,B,C,P,Q,R)
\tkzDrawLine[blue](Q,R)
\tkzDrawLines[red](A,P B,Q R,C)
\tkzDrawSegments(A,R C,P C,Q)
\end{tikzpicture}
```



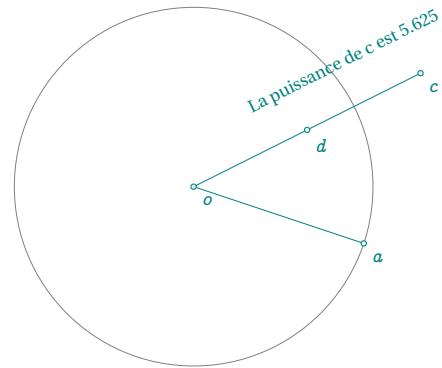
10.2.3 Inversion: point, line and circle

The inversion method can be used on a point, a line or a circle. Depending on the type of object, the function determines the correct algorithm to use.

10.2.4 Inversion: point

The inversion method can be used on a point, a group of points, a line or a circle. Depending on the type of object, the function determines the correct algorithm to use.

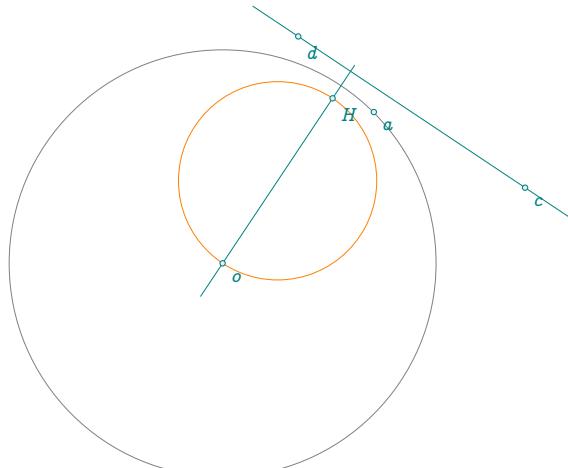
```
\begin{tkzelements}
z.o = point: new (-1,2)
z.a = point: new (2,1)
C.oa = circle: new (z.o,z.a)
z.c = point: new (3,4)
z.d = C.oa: inversion (z.c)
p = C.oa: power (z.c)
\end{tkzelements}
\begin{tikzpicture}
\tkzGetNodes
\tkzDrawCircle(o,a)
\tkzDrawSegments(o,a o,c)
\tkzDrawPoints(a,o,c,d)
\tkzLabelPoints(a,o,c,d)
\tkzLabelSegment[sloped,above=1em](c,d){%
Power of c with respect to C is \tkzUseLua{p}}
\end{tikzpicture}
```



10.2.5 Inversion: line

The result is either a straight line or a circle.

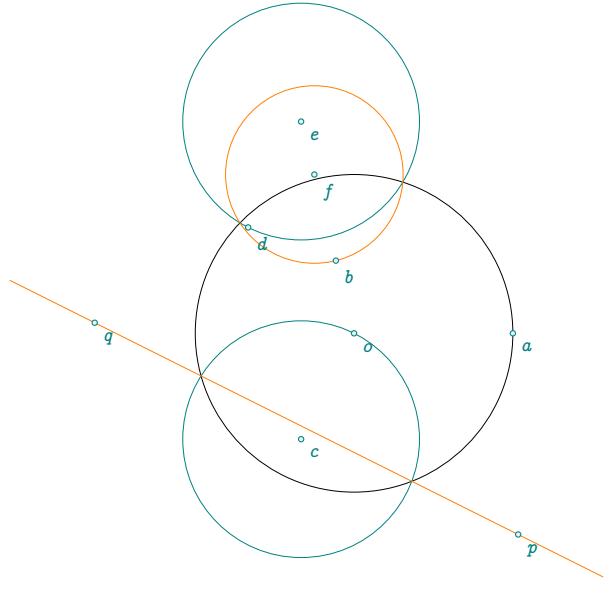
```
\begin{tkzelements}
z.o = point: new (-1,1)
z.a = point: new (1,3)
C.oa = circle: new (z.o,z.a)
z.c = point: new (3,2)
z.d = point: new (0,4)
L.cd = line: new (z.c,z.d)
C.OH = C.oa: inversion (L.cd)
z.O,z.H = get_points(C.OH)
\end{tkzelements}
\begin{tikzpicture}
\tkzGetNodes
\tkzDrawCircles(o,a O,H)
\tkzDrawLines(c,d o,H)
\tkzDrawPoints(a,o,c,d,H)
\tkzLabelPoints(a,o,c,d,H)
\end{tikzpicture}
```



10.2.6 Inversion: circle

The result is either a straight line or a circle.

```
\begin{tkzelements}
scale = .7
z.o,z.a = point: new (-1,3),point: new (2,3)
z.c      = point: new (-2,1)
z.e,z.d = point: new (-2,7),point: new (-3,5)
C.oa     = circle: new (z.o,z.a)
C.ed     = circle: new (z.e,z.d)
C.co     = circle: new (z.c,z.o)
obj      = C.oa: inversion (C.co)
if obj.type == "line"
then z.p,z.q = get_points(obj)
else z.f,z.b = get_points(obj) end
obj      = C.oa: inversion(C.ed)
if obj.type == "line"
then z.p,z.q = get_points(obj)
else z.f,z.b = get_points(obj) end
color = "orange"
\end{tkzelements}
\begin{tikzpicture}
\tkzGetNodes
\tkzDrawCircles[black](o,a)
\tkzDrawCircles[teal](c,o e,d)
\tkzDrawCircles[\tkzUseLua{color}](f,b)
\tkzDrawLines[\tkzUseLua{color}](p,q)
\tkzDrawPoints(a,...,f,o,p,q)
\tkzLabelPoints(a,...,f,o,p,q)
\end{tikzpicture}
```



10.2.7 midcircle

From Eric Danneels and Floor van Lamoen: A midcircle of two given circles is a circle that swaps the two given circles by inversion. Midcircles are in the same pencil of circles as the given circles. The center of the midcircle(s) is one or both of the centers of similitude. We can distinguish four cases:

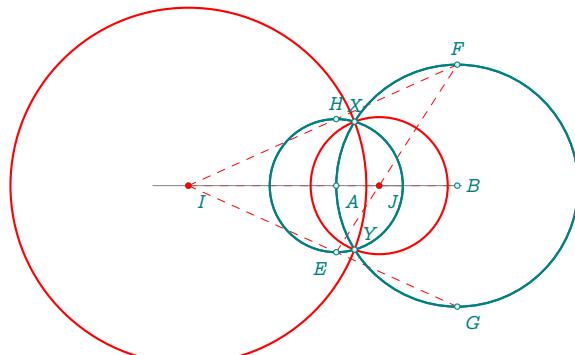
- (i) The two given circles intersect: there are two midcircles with centers at the centers of similitude of the given circles;
- (ii) One given circle is in the interior of the other given circle. Then there is one midcircle with center of similitude at the internal center of similitude of the given circles;
- (iii) One given circle is in the exterior of the other given circle. Then there is one midcircle with center at the external center of similitude of the given circles. Clearly the tangency cases can be seen as limit cases of the above;
- (iv) If the circles intersect in a single point, the unique midcircle has center at the external similitude center or at internal similitude center.

Let's look at each of these cases:

- (i) If the two given circles intersect, then there are two circles of inversion through their common points, with centers at the centers of similitudes. The two midcircles bisect their angles and are orthogonal to each other. The centers of the midcircles are the internal center of similitude and the external center of similitude I and J .

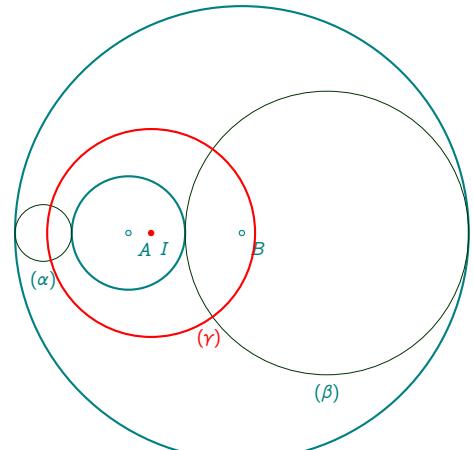
Consider two intersecting circles (\mathcal{A}) and (\mathcal{B}) . We can obtain the centers of similarity of these two circles by constructing EH and FG two diameters parallel of the circles (\mathcal{A}) and (\mathcal{B}) . The line (GE) intercepts the line (AB) in J and the line (EF) intercepts the line (AB) in I . The circles (\mathcal{I}) and (\mathcal{J}) are orthogonal and are the midcircles of (\mathcal{A}) and (\mathcal{B}) . The division $(A,B;I,J)$ is harmonic.

```
\begin{tkzelements}
scale = .8
z.A = point : new ( 1 , Q )
z.B = point : new ( 3 , Q )
z.O = point : new ( 2.1, Q )
z.P = point : new ( 1 ,Q )
C.AO = circle : new (z.A,z.O)
C.BP = circle : new (z.B,z.P)
z.E = C.AO.south
z.H = C.AO.north
z.F = C.BP.north
z.G = C.BP.south
C.IT,C.JV = C.AO : midcircle (C.BP)
z.I,z.T = get_points ( C.IT      )
z.J,z.V = get_points ( C.JV      )
z.X,z.Y = intersection (C.AO,C.BP)
\end{tkzelements}
```



- (ii) One given circle is in the interior of the other given circle.

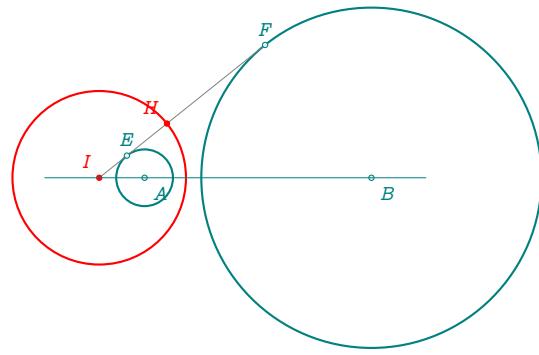
```
\begin{tkzelements}
scale =.75
z.A = point : new ( 3 , Q )
z.B = point : new ( 5 , Q )
z.O = point : new ( 2 , Q )
z.P = point : new ( 1 , Q )
L.AB = line : new (z.A,z.B)
C.AO = circle : new (z.A,z.O)
C.BP = circle : new (z.B,z.P)
z.R,z.S = intersection (L.AB,C.BP)
z.U,z.V = intersection (L.AB,C.AO)
C.SV = circle : diameter (z.S,z.V)
C.UR = circle : diameter (z.U,z.R)
z.x = C.SV.center
z.y = C.UR.center
C.IT = C.AO : midcircle (C.BP)
z.I,z.T = get_points ( C.IT      )
\end{tkzelements}
```



This case is a little more complicated. We'll construct the two circles (α) and (β) tangent to the two given circles. Then we construct the radical circle orthogonal to the circles (α) and (β) . Its center is the radical center as well as the center of internal similitude of circles of center A and B .

- (iii) When the two given circles are external to each other, we construct the external center of similitude of the two given circles. I is the center of external similarity of the two given circles. To obtain the inversion circle, simply note that H is such that $IH^2 = IE \times IF$.

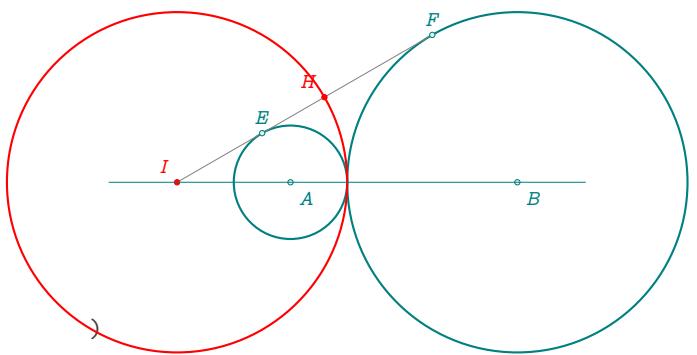
```
\begin{tkzelements}
scale=.75
local a,b,c,d
z.A = point : new ( Q , Q )
z.B = point : new ( 4 , Q )
z.a = point : new ( .5 , Q)
z.b = point : new ( 1 , Q)
C.Aa = circle : new (z.A,z.a)
C.Bb = circle : new (z.B,z.b)
L.AB = line : new (z.A,z.B)
z.E = C.Aa.north
z.F = C.Bb.north
L.EF = line : new (z.E,z.F)
C.IT = C.Aa : midcircle (C.Bb)
z.I,z.T = get_points ( C.IT )
L.TF = C.Bb : tangent_from (z.I)
z.H = intersection (L.TF,C.IT)
z.E = intersection (L.TF,C.Aa)
z.F=L.TF.pb
\end{tkzelements}
```



- (iv) Consider two tangent circles (\mathcal{A}) and (\mathcal{B}),

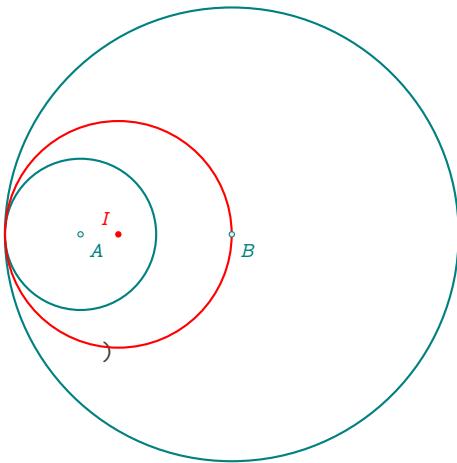
- (\mathcal{B}) being external and tangent to (\mathcal{A}). The construction is identical to the previous one.

```
\begin{tkzelements}
scale=.75
local a,b,c,d
z.A = point : new ( Q , Q )
z.B = point : new ( 4 , Q )
z.a = point : new ( 1 , Q)
z.b = point : new ( 1 , Q)
C.Aa = circle : new (z.A,z.a)
C.Bb = circle : new (z.B,z.b)
L.AB = line : new (z.A,z.B)
z.E = C.Aa.north
z.F = C.Bb.north
L.EF = line : new (z.E,z.F)
C.IT = C.Aa : midcircle (C.Bb)
z.I,z.T = get_points ( C.IT )
L.TF = C.Bb : tangent_from (z.I)
z.H = intersection (L.TF,C.IT)
z.E = intersection (L.TF,C.Aa)
z.F=L.TF.pb
\end{tkzelements}
```



- When one of the given circles is inside and tangent to the other, the construction is easy.

```
\begin{tkzelements}
z.A      = point : new ( 2 , 0 )
z.B      = point : new ( 4 , 0 )
z.a      = point : new ( 1 , 0 )
z.b      = point : new ( 1 , 0 )
C.Aa    = circle : new (z.A,z.a)
C.Bb    = circle : new (z.B,z.b)
C.IT    = C.Aa : midcircle (C.Bb)
z.I,z.T = get_points (           C.IT
\end{tkzelements}
```



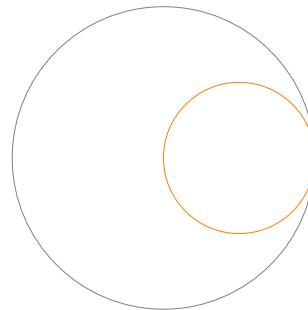
10.3 Circles_position

This function returns a string indicating the position of the circle in relation to another. Useful for creating a function. Cases are:

- outside
- outside tangent
- inside tangent
- inside
- intersect

```
\begin{tkzelements}
z.A      = point : new ( 0 , 0 )
z.a      = point : new ( 3 , 0 )
z.B      = point : new ( 2 , 0 )
z.b      = point : new ( 3 , 0 )
C.Aa    = circle: new (z.A,z.a)
C.Bb    = circle: new (z.B,z.b)
position = C.Aa : circles_position (C.Bb)
if position == "inside tangent"
then color = "orange"
else color = "blue" end
\end{tkzelements}

\begin{tikzpicture}
\tkzGetNodes
\tkzDrawCircle(A,a)
\tkzDrawCircle[color=\tkzUseLua{color}](B,b)
\end{tikzpicture}
```



10.4 Common tangent: Angle of two intersecting circles

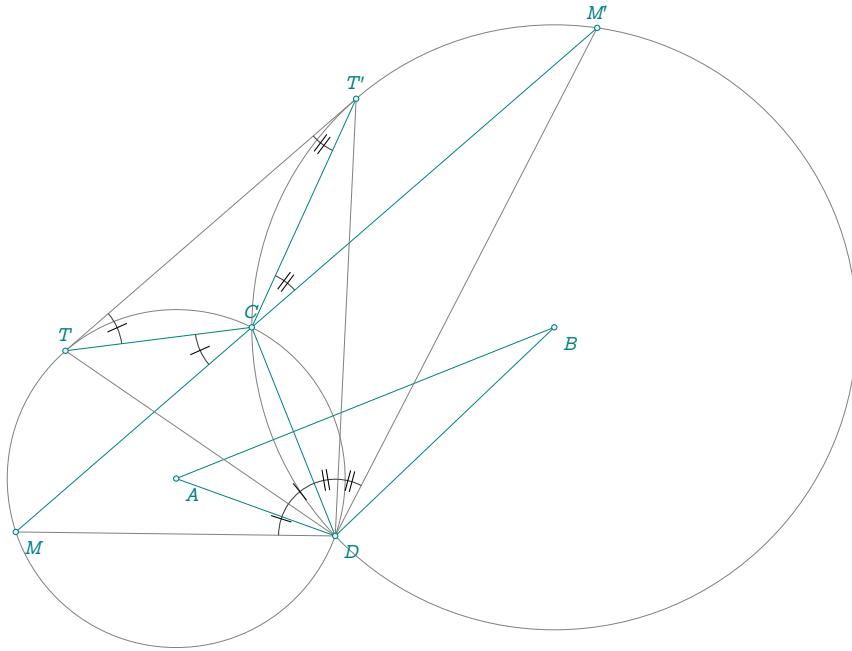
Let be a tangent common to both circles at T and T' (closest to C). Let a secant parallel to this tangent pass through C . Then the segment $[TT']$ is seen from the other common point D at an angle equal to half the angle of the two circles.

```
\begin{tkzelements}
z.A      = point : new ( 0 , 0 )
```

```

z.B    = point : new ( 5 , 2 )
L.AB = line : new ( z.A , z.B )
z.C    = point : new ( 1 , 2 )
C.AC  = circle : new (z.A,z.C)
C.BC  = circle : new (z.B,z.C)
z.T,z.Tp = C.AC : common_tangent (C.BC)
L.TTp = line : new (z.T,z.Tp)
z.M    = C.AC : point (Q.45)
L.MC  = line : new (z.M,z.C)
z.Mp  = intersection (L.MC, C.BC)
L.mm = L.TTp : ll_from (z.C)
_,z.M = intersection (L.mm, C.AC)
z.Mp = intersection (L.mm, C.BC)
_,z.D = intersection (C.AC,C.BC)
\end{tkzelements}
\begin{tikzpicture}
\tkzGetNodes
\tkzDrawCircles(A,C B,C)
\tkzDrawSegments(M,M' A,D B,D A,B C,D T,C T',C)
\tkzDrawSegments[gray](D,M D,M' T,T' D,T D,T')
\tkzDrawPoints(A,B,C,D,M,M',T,T')
\tkzLabelPoints(A,B,D,M)
\tkzLabelPoints[above](C,M',T,T')
\tkzMarkAngles[mark=|,size=.75](T,C,M C,T,T' C,D,T T,D,M)
\tkzMarkAngles[mark=||,size=.75](M',C,T' T,T' C T',D,C M',D,T')
\end{tikzpicture}

```



10.5 Common tangent: orthogonality

For two circles to be orthogonal, it is necessary and sufficient for a secant passing through one of their common points to be seen from the other common point at a right angle.

```
\begin{tkzelements}
z.A    = point : new ( Q , Q )

```

```

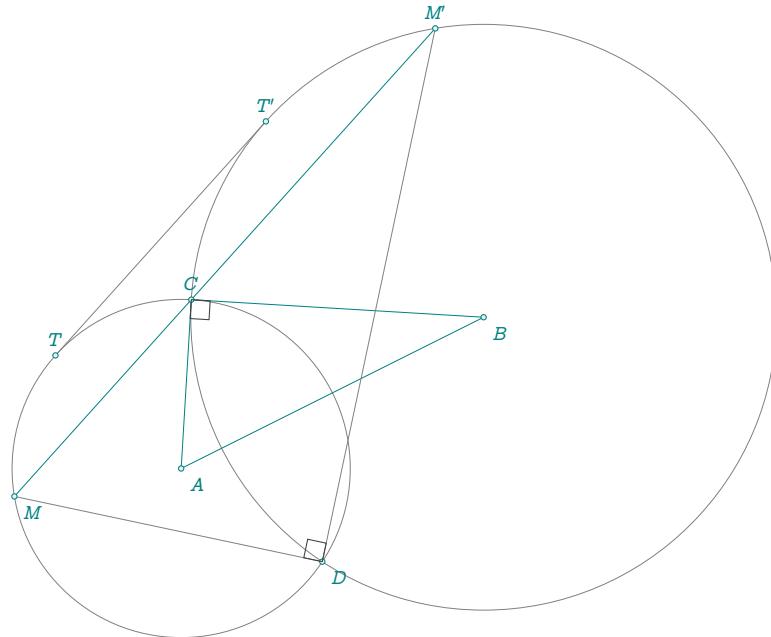
z.B = point : new ( 4 , 2 )
L.AB = line : new ( z.A , z.B )
z.a = point : new ( 1 , 2 )
C.Aa = circle : new (z.A,z.a)
C.BC = C.Aa : orthogonal_from (z.B)
z.C,z.D = intersection (C.Aa,C.BC)
C.AC = circle : new (z.A,z.C)
z.T,z.Tp = C.AC : common_tangent (C.BC)
L.TTp = line : new (z.T,z.Tp)
z.M = C.AC : point (Q.45)
L.MC = line : new (z.M,z.C)
z.Mp = intersection (L.MC, C.BC)
L.mm = L.TTp : ll_from (z.C)
_,z.M = intersection (L.mm, C.AC)
zMp = intersection (L.mm, C.BC)
\end{tkzelements}

```

```

\begin{tikzpicture}
\tkzGetNodes
\tkzDrawCircles(A,C B,C)
\tkzDrawSegments(M,M' A,C B,C A,B)
\tkzDrawSegments[gray](D,M D,M' T,T')
\tkzDrawPoints(A,B,C,D,M,M',T,T')
\tkzLabelPoints(A,B,D,M)
\tkzLabelPoints[above](C,M',T,T')
\tkzMarkRightAngles(M',D,M A,C,B)
\end{tikzpicture}

```



10.6 In_out for circle and disk

```

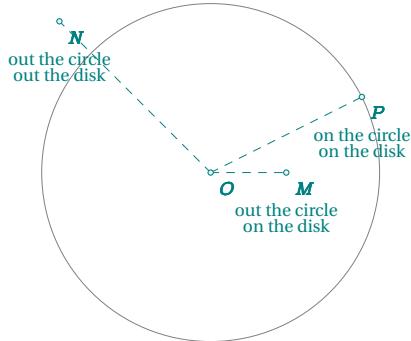
\begin{tkzelements}
z.O = point : new (0,0)
z.A = point : new (1,2)

```

```

C.OA = circle : new (z.0,z.A)
z.N = point : new (-2,2)
z.M = point : new (1,0)
z.P = point : new (2,1)
BCm = C.OA : in_out (z.M)
BDm = C.OA : in_out_disk (z.M)
BCn = C.OA : in_out (z.N)
BDn = C.OA : in_out_disk (z.N)
BCp = C.OA : in_out (z.P)
BDp = C.OA : in_out_disk (z.P)
\end{tkzelements}
\def\tkzPosPoint#1#2#3#4{%
\tkzLabelPoints(0,M,N,P)
\ifthenelse{\equal{\tkzUseLua{#1}}{true}}{%
\tkzLabelPoint[below=#4pt,font=\scriptsize](#2){on the #3}%
\tkzLabelPoint[below=#4pt,font=\scriptsize](#2){out the #3}%
\begin{tikzpicture}
\tkzGetNodes
\tkzDrawSegments[dashed](0,M 0,N 0,P)
\tkzDrawCircle(O,A)
\tkzDrawPoints(0,M,N,P)
\tkzPosPoint{BCm}{M}{circle}{8}
\tkzPosPoint{BCn}{N}{circle}{8}
\tkzPosPoint{BCp}{P}{circle}{8}
\tkzPosPoint{BDm}{M}{disk}{14}
\tkzPosPoint{BDn}{N}{disk}{14}
\tkzPosPoint{BDp}{P}{disk}{14}
\end{tikzpicture}
}

```



11 Class triangle

11.1 Attributes of a triangle

The triangle object is created using the new method, for example with

```
Creation T.ABC = triangle : new ( z.A , z.B , z.C )
```

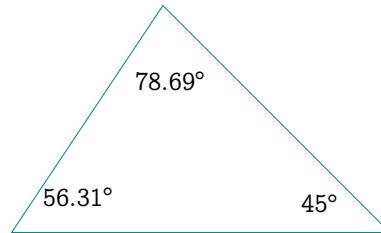
(Refer to examples: 23.3; 23.4; 23.9). Multiple attributes are then created.

Table 9: Triangle attributes.

Attributes	Application
pa	T.ABC.pa
pb	T.ABC.pb
pc	T.ABC.pc
type	'triangle'
circumcenter	T.ABC.circumcenter
centroid	T.ABC.centroid
incenter	T.ABC.incenter
orthocenter	T.ABC.orthocenter
eulercenter	T.ABC.eulercenter
spiekercenter	T.ABC.spiekercenter
a	It's the length of the side opposite the first vertex
b	It's the length of the side opposite the second vertex
c	It's the length of the side opposite the third vertex
alpha	Vertex angle of the first vertex
beta	Vertex angle of the second vertex
gamma	Vertex angle of the third vertex
ab	Line defined by the first two points of the triangle
bc	Line defined by the last two points
ca	Line defined by the last and the first points of the triangle

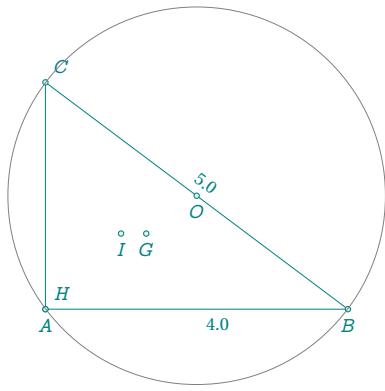
11.2 Triangle attributes: angles

```
\begin{tkzelements}
z.A      = point: new(0,0)
z.B      = point: new(5,0)
z.C      = point: new(2,3)
T.ABC    = triangle: new (z.A,z.B,z.C)
\end{tkzelements}
\def\wangle#1{\tkzDN[2]{%
 \tkzUseLua{math.deg(T.ABC.#1)}}}
\begin{tikzpicture}
\tkzGetNodes
\tkzDrawPolygons(A,B,C)
\tkzLabelAngle(B,A,C){$\wangle{alpha}^\circ$}
\tkzLabelAngle(C,B,A){$\wangle{beta}^\circ$}
\tkzLabelAngle(A,C,B){$\wangle{gamma}^\circ$}
\end{tikzpicture}
```



11.2.1 Example: triangle attributes

```
\begin{tkzelements}
z.A = point: new (0 , 0)
z.B = point: new (4 , 0)
z.C = point: new (0 , 3)
T.ABC = triangle : new (z.A,z.B,z.C)
z.O = T.ABC.circumcenter
z.I = T.ABC.incenter
z.H = T.ABC.orthocenter
z.G = T.ABC.centroid
a = T.ABC.a
b = T.ABC.b
c = T.ABC.c
alpha = T.ABC.alpha
beta = T.ABC.beta
gamma = T.ABC.gamma
\end{tkzelements}
\begin{tikzpicture}
\tkzGetNodes
\tkzDrawPolygon(A,B,C)
\tkzDrawPoints(A,B,C,O,G,I,H)
\tkzLabelPoints[below](A,B,O,G,I)
\tkzLabelPoints[above right](H,C)
\tkzDrawCircles(O,A)
\tkzLabelSegment[sloped](A,B){\tkzUseLua{c}}
\tkzLabelSegment[sloped,above](B,C){\tkzUseLua{a}}
\end{tikzpicture}
```



11.3 Methods of the class triangle

Table 10: triangle methods.

Methods	Comments
new (a, b ,c)	T.ABC = triangle : new (z.A,z.B,z.C)
...	T or T.name with what you want for name, is possible.
Points	
lemoine_point ()	T.ABC : lemoine_point () intersection os the symmedians
symmedian_point ()	Lemoine point or the Grebe point
bevan_point ()	Circumcenter of the excentral triangle
mittelpunkt_point ()	Symmedian point of the excentral triangle
gergonne_point ()	Intersection of the three cevians that lead to the contact points
nagel_point ()	Intersection of the three cevians that lead to the extouch points
feuerbach_point ()	The point at which the incircle and euler circle are tangent.
spieker_center ()	Incenter of the medial triangle
barycenter (ka,kb,kc)	T.ABC: barycenter (2,1,1) barycenter of ({A,2},{B,1},{C,1})
base (u,v)	z.D = T.ABC: base(1,1) → ABCD is a parallelogram
projection (p)	Projection of a point on the sides
euler_points ()	Euler points of euler circle
nine_points ()	9 Points of the euler circle
parallelogram ()	z.D = T.ABC : parallelogram () → ABCD is a parallelogram
Lines	
altitude (n)	L.AHa = T.ABC : altitude () n empty or 0 line from A ^a
bisector (n)	L.Bb = T.ABC : bisector (1) n=1 line from B ^b
bisector_ext(n)	n=2 line from the third vertex.
symmedian_line (n)	Cevian with respect to Lemoine point.
euler_line ()	the line through N,G,H and O if the triangle is not equilateral ^c
antiparallel(pt,n)	n=0 antiparallel through pt to (BC), n=1 to (AC) etc.
Circles	
euler_circle ()	C.NP = T.ABC : euler_circle () → N euler point ^d
circum_circle ()	C.OA = T.ABC : circum () Triangle's circumscribed circle
in_circle ()	Inscribed circle of the triangle
ex_circle (n)	Circle tangent to the three sides of the triangle ; n=1 swap ; n=2 swap
first_lemoine_circle ()	The center is the midpoint between Lemoine point and the circumcenter. ^e
second_lemoine_circle ()	Refer to example 23.58
spieker_circle ()	The incircle of the medial triangle

^a z.Ha = L.AHa.pb recovers the common point of the opposite side and altitude. The method orthic is usefull.

^b _,z.b = get_points(L.Bb) recovers the common point of the opposite side and bisector.

^c N center of nine points circle, G centroid, H orthocenter , O circum center

^d The midpoint of each side of the triangle, the foot of each altitude, the midpoint of the line segment from each vertex of the triangle to the orthocenter.

^e Through the Lemoine point draw lines parallel to the triangle's sides. The points where the parallel lines intersect the sides of ABC then lie on a circle known as the first Lemoine circle.

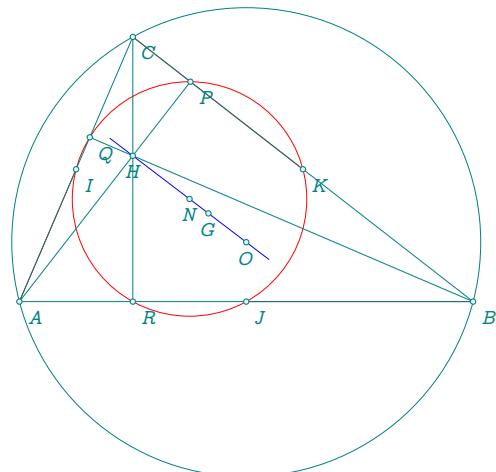
Remark: If you don't need to use the triangle object several times, you can obtain a bisector or a altitude with the next functions

bisector (z.A,z.B,z.C) and altitude (z.A,z.B,z.C) Refer to (28)

Methods	Comments
Triangles	
orthic ()	$T = T.ABC : \text{orthic} ()$ triangle joining the feet of the altitudes
medial ()	$T = T.ABC : \text{medial} ()$ triangle with vertices at the midpoints
incentral ()	Cevian triangle of the triangle with respect to its incenter
excentral ()	Triangle with vertices corresponding to the excenters
extouch ()	Triangle formed by the points of tangency with the excircles
intouch ()	Contact triangle formed by the points of tangency of the incircle
tangential ()	Triangle formed by the lines tangent to the circumcircle at the vertices
feuerbach ()	Triangle formed by the points of tangency of the euler circle with the excircles
anti ()	Anticomplementary Triangle The given triangle is its medial triangle.
cevian (pt)	Triangle formed with the endpoints of the three cevians with respect to pt.
symmedian ()	Triangle formed with the intersection points of the symmedians.
euler ()	Triangle formed with the euler points
Ellipses	
steiner_inellipse ()	Refer to ex. (11.4.1)
steiner_circumellipse ()	Refer to ex. (11.4.1)
euler_ellipse ()	Refer to ex. (11.4)
Miscellaneous	
area ()	$\mathcal{A} = T.ABC : \text{area} ()$
barycentric_coordinates (pt)	Triples of numbers corresponding to masses placed at the vertices
in_out (pt)	Boolean. Test if pt is inside the triangle
check_equilateral ()	Boolean. Test if the triangle is equilateral

11.3.1 Euler line

```
\begin{tkzelements}
z.A      = point: new (0 , 0)
z.B      = point: new (6 , 0)
z.C      = point: new (1.5 , 3.5)
T.ABC    = triangle: new (z.A,z.B,z.C)
z.O      = T.ABC.circumcenter
z.G      = T.ABC.centroid
z.N      = T.ABC.eulercenter
z.H      = T.ABC.orthocenter
z.P,z.Q,z.R = get_points (T.ABC: orthic())
z.K,z.I,z.J = get_points (T.ABC: medial ())
\end{tkzelements}
\begin{tikzpicture}
\tkzGetNodes
\tkzDrawLines[blue](O,H)
\tkzDrawCircle[red](N,I)
\tkzDrawCircles[teal](O,A)
\tkzDrawSegments(A,P B,Q C,R)
\tkzDrawSegments[red](A,I B,J C,K)
\tkzDrawPolygons(A,B,C)
\tkzDrawPoints(A,B,C,N,I,J,K,O,P,Q,R,H,G)
\tkzLabelPoints(A,B,C,I,J,K,P,Q,R,H)
\tkzLabelPoints[below](N,O,G)
\end{tikzpicture}
```

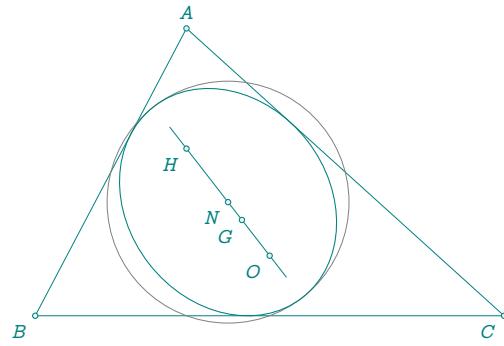


11.4 Euler ellipse

Example of obtaining the Euler circle as well as the Euler ellipse.

```
\begin{tkzelements}
z.A      = point: new (2,3.8)
z.B      = point: new (0,0)
z.C      = point: new (6.2,0)
L.AB     = line : new ( z.A , z.B )
T.ABC   = triangle: new (z.A,z.B,z.C)
z.K      = midpoint (z.B,z.C)
E.euler = T.ABC : euler_ellipse ()
z.N      = T.ABC.eulercenter
C.euler = circle : new (z.N,z.K)
ang     = math.deg(E.euler.slope)
z.O      = T.ABC.circumcenter
z.G      = T.ABC.centroid
z.H      = T.ABC.orthocenter
\end{tkzelements}

\begin{tikzpicture}
\tkzGetNodes
\tkzDrawPolygon(A,B,C)
\tkzDrawCircle(N,K)
\tkzDrawEllipse[teal](N,\tkzUseLua{E.euler.Rx},
                      \tkzUseLua{E.euler.Ry},\tkzUseLua{ang})
\tkzDrawLine(O,H)
\tkzDrawPoints(A,B,C,N,O,H,G)
\tkzLabelPoints[below left](B,C,N,O,H,G)
\tkzLabelPoints[above](A)
\end{tikzpicture}
```



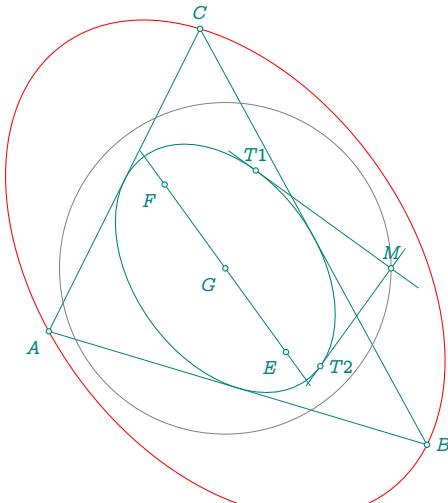
11.4.1 Steiner inellipse and circumellipse

In this example, the inner and outer Steiner ellipses, referred to as the "inellipse" and "circumellipse" (Math-world.com), respectively, along with the orthoptic circle, are depicted.. The triangle must be acutangle.

```
\begin{tkzelements}
scale    = .5
z.A      = point: new (1, 4)
z.B      = point: new (11, 1)
z.C      = point: new (5, 12)
T.ABC   = triangle: new(z.A,z.B,z.C)
E       = T.ABC: steiner_inellipse ()
z.G      = E.center
ang     = math.deg(E.slope)
z.F      = E.Fa
z.E      = E.Fb
C       = E: orthoptic_circle ()
z.w      = C.center
z.o      = C.through
EE     = T.ABC : steiner_circumellipse ()
z.M      = C : point (0)
L.T1,L.T2= E : tangent_from (z.M)
z.T1    = L.T1.pb
z.T2    = L.T2.pb
\end{tkzelements}

\begin{tikzpicture}
\tkzGetNodes

```

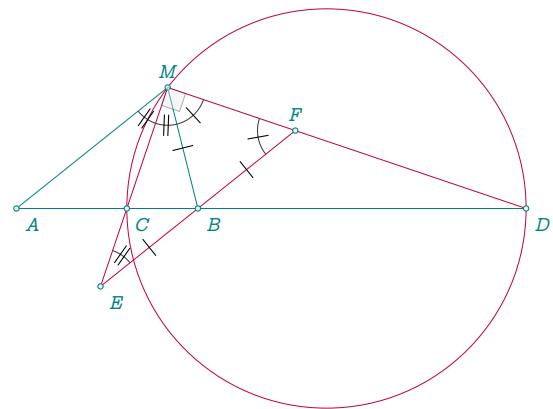


```
\tkzDrawPolygon(A,B,C)
\tkzDrawCircles(w,o)
\tkzDrawEllipse[teal](G,\tkzUseLua{E.Rx},
    \tkzUseLua{E.Ry},\tkzUseLua{ang})
\tkzDrawEllipse[red](G,\tkzUseLua{EE.Rx},
    \tkzUseLua{EE.Ry},\tkzUseLua{ang})
\tkzDrawLines(F,E M,T1 M,T2) %
\tkzDrawPoints(A,B,C,F,E,G,M,T1,T2)
\tkzLabelPoints[above](C,M,T1)
\tkzLabelPoints[right](T2,B)
\tkzLabelPoints[below left](A,F,E,G)
\end{tikzpicture}
```

11.5 Harmonic division and bisector

```
\begin{tkzelements}
scale      = .4
z.A        = point: new (0 , 0)
z.B        = point: new (6 , 0)
z.M        = point: new (5 , 4)
T.AMB      = triangle : new (z.A,z.M,z.B)
L.AB       = T.AMB.ca
L.bis      = T.AMB : bisector (1)
z.C        = L.bis.pb
L.bisext   = T.AMB : bisector_ext (1)
z.D        = intersection (L.bisext,L.AB)
L.CD       = line: new (z.C,z.D)
z.O        = L.CD.mid
L.AM       = line: new (z.A,z.M)
L.LL       = L.AM : ll_from (z.B)
L.MC       = line: new (z.M,z.C)
L.MD       = line: new (z.M,z.D)
z.E        = intersection (L.LL,L.MC)
z.F        = intersection (L.LL,L.MD)
\end{tkzelements}
```

```
\begin{tikzpicture}
\tkzGetNodes
\tkzDrawPolygon(A,B,M)
\tkzDrawCircle[purple](O,C)
\tkzDrawSegments[purple](M,E M,D E,F)
\tkzDrawSegments(D,B)
\tkzDrawPoints(A,B,M,C,D,E,F)
\tkzLabelPoints[below right](A,B,C,D,E)
\tkzLabelPoints[above](M,F)
\tkzMarkRightAngle[opacity=.4,fill=gray!20](C,M,D)
\tkzMarkAngles[mark=||,size=.5](A,M,E E,M,B B,E,M)
\tkzMarkAngles[mark=|,size=.5](B,M,F M,F,B)
\tkzMarkSegments(B,E B,M B,F)
\end{tikzpicture}
```



12 Class ellipse

12.1 Attributes of an ellipse

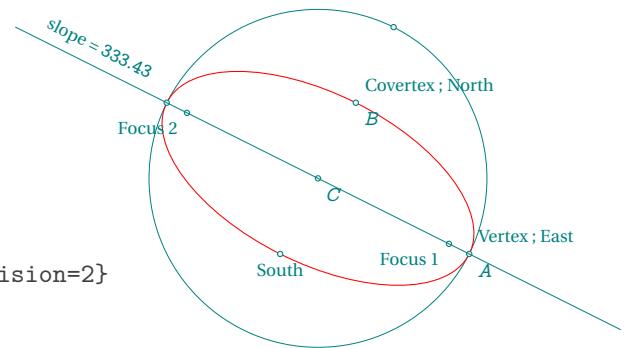
The first attributes are the three points that define the ellipse: : the `center` , the `vertex` and the `covertex`. The first method to define an ellipse is to give its center, then the point named `vertex` which defines the major axis and finally the point named `covertex` which defines the minor axis.

Table 11: Ellipse attributes.

Attributes	Application
<code>center</code>	center of the ellipse
<code>vertex</code>	point of the major axis and of the ellipse
<code>covertex</code>	point of the minor axis and of the ellipse
<code>type</code>	The type is 'ellipse'
<code>Rx</code>	Radius from center to vertex
<code>Ry</code>	Radius from center to covertex
<code>slope</code>	Slope of the line passes through the foci
<code>Fa</code>	First focus
<code>Fb</code>	Second focus
<code>south</code>	See next example 12.1.1
<code>north</code>	
<code>west</code>	
<code>east</code>	

12.1.1 Atributes of an ellipse: example

```
\begin{tkzelements}
z.C = point: new (3 , 2)
z.A = point: new (5 , 1)
L.CA = line : new (z.C,z.A)
z.b = L.CA.north_pa
L = line : new (z.C,z.b)
z.B = L : point (.5)
E = ellipse: new (z.C,z.A,z.B)
a = E.Rx
b = E.Ry
z.F1 = E.Fa
z.F2 = E.Fb
slope = math.deg(E.slope)
z.E = E.east
z.N = E.north
z.W = E.west
z.S = E.south
z.Co = E.covertex
z.Ve = E.vertex
\end{tkzelements}
\begin{tikzpicture}
\pgfkeys{/pgf/number format/.cd,fixed,precision=2}
\tkzGetNodes
\tkzDrawCircles[teal](C,A)
\tkzDrawEllipse[red](C,\tkzUseLua{a},\tkzUseLua{b},
\tkzUseLua{slope})
\tkzDrawPoints(C,A,B,b,W,S,F1,F2)
\tkzLabelPoints(C,A,B)
\tkzDrawLine[add = .5 and .5](A,W)
\tkzLabelSegment[pos=1.5,above,sloped](A,W){%
slope = \pgfmathprintnumber{\tkzUseLua{slope}}}
\tkzLabelPoint[below](S){South}
\tkzLabelPoint[below left](F1){Focus 1}
\tkzLabelPoint[below left](F2){Focus 2}
\tkzLabelPoint[above right](Ve){Vertex ; East}
\tkzLabelPoint[above right](Co){Covertex ; North}
\end{tikzpicture}
```



12.2 Methods of the class ellipse

Before reviewing the methods and functions related to ellipses, let's take a look at how you can draw ellipses with `tkz-elements`. The `\tkzDrawEllipse` macro requires 4 arguments: the center of the ellipse, the long radius (on the focus axis), the short radius and the angle formed by the focus axis. The last three arguments must be transferred from `tkzelements` to `tikzpicture`. To do this, you'll need to use a macro: `\tkzUseLua` defined in `tkz-elements`. Refer to 6.1.2 or 20.6 or next examples.

Table 12: Ellipse methods.

Methods	Example
new (pc, pa ,pb)	E = ellipse: new (center, vertex, covertex)
foci (f1,f2,v)	E = ellipse: foci (focus 1, focus 2, vertex)
radii (c,a,b,sl)	E = ellipse: radii (center, radius a, radius b, slope)
in_out (pt)	pt in/out of the ellipse
tangent_at (pt)	Refer to ex. 9.2.6
tangent_from (pt)	Refer to ex. 9.2.6
point (t)	vertex = point (0) covertex = point (0.25) ex Refer to 9.2.6
orthoptic_circle ()	Refer to ex. 11.4.1

12.2.1 Method new

The main method for creating a new ellipse is new. The arguments are three: center, vertex and covertex For attributes Refer to 12.

```
\begin{tkzelements}
```

```

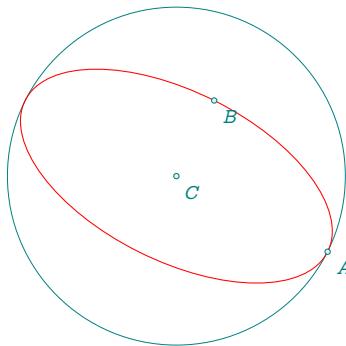
z.C      = point: new (3 , 2)
z.A      = point: new (5 , 1)
z.B      = z.C : homothety(0.5,
                         z.C : rotation (math.pi/2,z.A))
E       = ellipse: new (z.C,z.A,z.B)
a       = E.Rx
b       = E.Ry
slope = math.deg(E.slope)
\end{tkzelements}
```

```
\begin{tikzpicture}
```

```

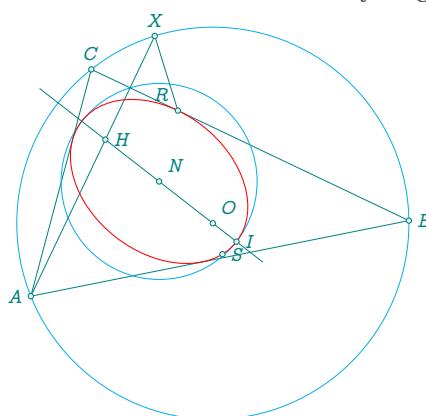
\tkzGetNodes
\tkzDrawCircles[teal](C,A)
\tkzDrawEllipse[red](C,\tkzUseLua{a},
                     \tkzUseLua{b},\tkzUseLua{slope})
\tkzDrawPoints(C,A,B)
\tkzLabelPoints(C,A,B)
\end{tikzpicture}
```

The function tkzUseLua (variable) is used to transfer values to TikZ or tkz-euclide.



12.2.2 Method foci

The first two points are the foci of the ellipse, and the third one is the vertex. We can deduce all the other characteristics from these points. *The function launches the new method, defining all the characteristics of the ellipse.*



```
\begin{tkzelements}
z.A      = point: new (0 , 0)
z.B      = point: new (5 , 1)
```

```

L.AB      = line : new (z.A,z.B)
z.C      = point: new (.8 , 3)
T.ABC    = triangle: new (z.A,z.B,z.C)
z.N      = T.ABC.eulercenter
z.H      = T.ABC.orthocenter
z.O      = T.ABC.circumcenter
_,_,z.Mc = get_points (T.ABC: medial ())
L.euler  = line: new (z.H,z.O)
C.circum = circle: new (z.O,z.A)
C.euler  = circle: new (z.N,z.Mc)
z.i,z.j = intersection (L.euler,C.circum)
z.I,z.J = intersection (L.euler,C.euler)
E       = ellipse: foci (z.H,z.O,z.I)
L.AH    = line: new (z.A,z.H)
z.X     = intersection (L.AH,C.circum)
L.XO    = line: new (z.X,z.O)
z.R,z.S = intersection (L.XO,E)
a,b     = E.Rx,E.Ry
ang     = math.deg(E.slope)
\end{tkzelements}

\begin{tikzpicture}
\tkzGetNodes
\tkzDrawPolygon(A,B,C)
\tkzDrawCircles[cyan](O,A,N,I)
\tkzDrawSegments(X,R A,X)
\tkzDrawEllipse[red](N,\tkzUseLua{a},
\tkzUseLua{b},\tkzUseLua{ang})
\tkzDrawLines[add=.2 and .5](I,H)
\tkzDrawPoints(A,B,C,N,O,X,H,R,S,I)
\tkzLabelPoints[above](C,X)
\tkzLabelPoints[above right](N,O)
\tkzLabelPoints[above left](R)
\tkzLabelPoints[left](A)
\tkzLabelPoints[right](B,I,S,H)
\end{tikzpicture}

```

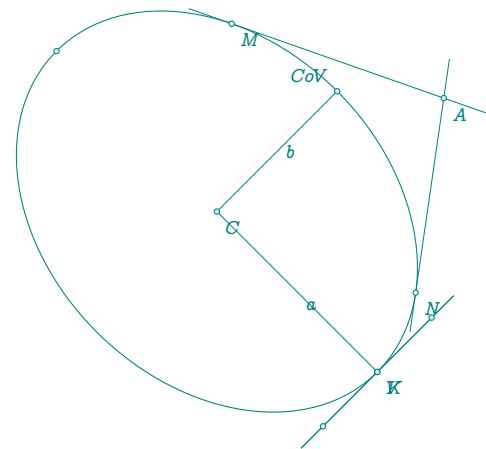
12.2.3 Method point and radii

The method `point` defines a point M of the ellipse whose coordinates are $(a \times \cos(\phi), b \times \sin(\phi))$. phi angle between (center,vertex) and (center,M)

The environment `tkzelements` uses as `lua` the radian as unit for angles.

```
\begin{tkzelements}
z.C      = point: new (2 , 3)
z.A      = point: new (6 , 5)
a        = value(4)
b        = value(3)
ang     = math.deg(-math.pi/4)
E       = ellipse: radii (z.C,a,b,-math.pi/4)
z.V      = E : point (@)
z.K      = E : point (1)
z.CoV    = E : point (@.25)
z.X      = E : point (@.5)
L       = E : tangent_at (z.V)
z.x,z.y = get_points(L)
L.ta,L.tb = E : tangent_from (z.A)
z.M      = L.ta.pb
z.N      = L.tb.pb
L.K      = E : tangent_at (z.K)
z.ka,z.kb = get_points(L.K)
\end{tkzelements}

\begin{tikzpicture}
\tkzGetNodes
\tkzDrawSegments(C,V C,CoV)
\tkzDrawLines(x,y A,M A,N ka,kb)
\tkzLabelSegment(C,V){$a$}
\tkzLabelSegment[right](C,CoV){$b$}
\tkzDrawEllipse[teal](C,\tkzUseLua{a},\tkzUseLua{b},\tkzUseLua{ang})
\tkzDrawPoints(C,V,CoV,X,x,y,M,N,A,K)
\tkzLabelPoints(C,V,A,M,N,K)
\tkzLabelPoints[above left](CoV)
\end{tikzpicture}
```



13 Class Quadrilateral

13.1 Quadrilateral Attributes

Points are created in the direct direction. A test is performed to check whether the points form a rectangle, otherwise compilation is blocked.

```
Creation Q.new = rectangle : new (z.A,z.B,z.C,z.D)
```

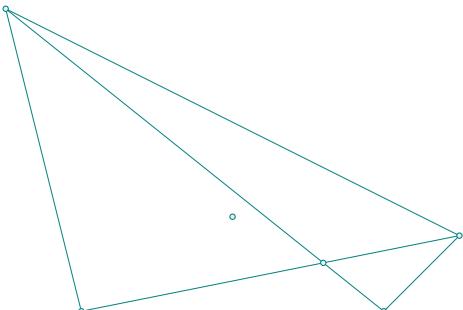
Table 13: rectangle attributes.

Attributes	Application
pa	$z.A = Q.new.pa$
pb	$z.B = Q.new.pb$
pc	$z.C = Q.new.pc$
pd	$z.D = Q.new.pd$
type	$Q.new.type = 'quadrilateral'$
i	$z.I = Q.new.i$ intersection of diagonals
g	$z.G = Q.new.g$ barycenter
a	$AB = Q.new.a$ barycenter
b	$BC = Q.new.b$ barycenter
c	$CD = Q.new.c$ barycenter
d	$DA = Q.new.d$ barycenter
ab	$Q.new.ab$ line passing through two vertices
ac	$Q.new.ca$ idem.
ad	$Q.new.ad$ idem.
bc	$Q.new.bc$ idem.
bd	$Q.new.bd$ idem.
cd	$Q.new.cd$ idem.

13.1.1 Quadrilateral attributes

```
\begin{tkzelements}
z.A      = point : new ( 0 , 0 )
z.B      = point : new ( 4 , 0 )
z.C      = point : new ( 5 , 1 )
z.D      = point : new ( -1 , 4 )
Q.ABCD   = quadrilateral : new ( z.A , z.B , z.C , z.D )
z.I      = Q.ABCD.i
z.G      = Q.ABCD.g
\end{tkzelements}
```

```
\begin{tikzpicture}
\tkzGetNodes
\tkzDrawPolygon(A,B,C,D)
\tkzDrawSegments(A,C B,D)
\tkzDrawPoints(A,B,C,D,I,G)
\end{tikzpicture}
```



13.2 Quadrilateral methods

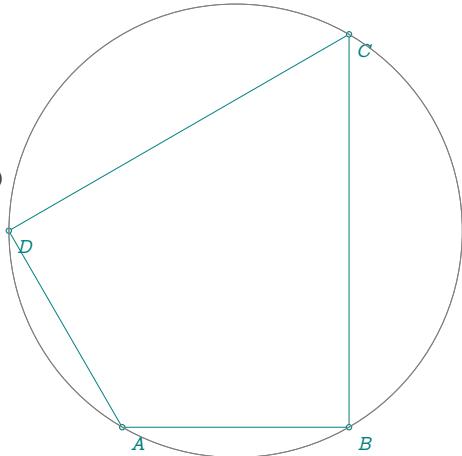
Table 14: Quadrilateral methods.

Methods	Comments
iscyclic ()	inscribed ? (Refer to next example)

13.2.1 Inscribed quadrilateral

```
\begin{tkzelements}
z.A      = point : new ( 0 , 0 )
z.B      = point : new ( 4 , 0 )
z.D      = point : polar ( 4 , 2*math.pi/3 )
L.DB    = line : new (z.D,z.B)
T.equ   = L.DB : equilateral ()
z.C      = T.equ.pc
Q.new   = quadrilateral : new (z.A,z.B,z.C,z.D)
bool    = Q.new : iscyclic ()
if bool == true then
C.cir   = triangle : new (z.A,z.B,z.C): circum_circle ()
z.O      = C.cir.center
end
\end{tkzelements}

\begin{tikzpicture}
\tkzGetNodes
\tkzDrawPolygon(A,B,C,D)
\tkzDrawPoints(A,B,C,D)
\tkzLabelPoints(A,B,C,D)
\tkzDrawCircle(O,A)
\ifthenelse{\equal{\tkzUseLua{bool}}{true}}{
\tkzDrawCircle(O,A){}}
\end{tikzpicture}
```



14 Class square

14.1 Square attributes

Points are created in the direct direction. A test is performed to check whether the points form a square. Otherwise, compilation is blocked."

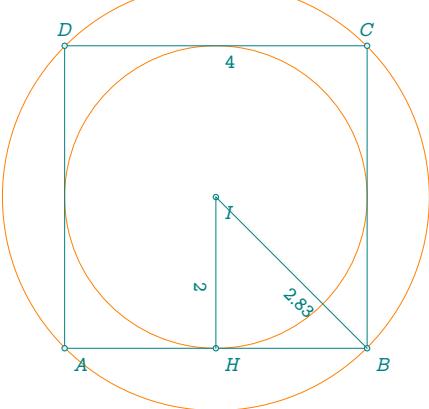
```
Creation S.AB = square : new (z.A,z.B,z.C,z.D)
```

Table 15: Square attributes.

Attributes	Application
pa	$z.A = S.AB.pa$
pb	$z.B = S.AB.pb$
pc	$z.C = S.AB.pc$
pd	$z.D = S.AB.pd$
type	$S.AB.type = 'square'$
side	$s = S.AB.center$ $s = \text{length of side}$
center	$z.I = S.AB.center$ $\text{center of the square}$
extradius	$S.AB.exradius$ $\text{radius of the circumscribed circle}$
inradius	$S.AB.inradius$ $\text{radius of the inscribed circle}$
proj	$S.AB.proj$ $\text{projection of the center on one side}$
ab	$S.AB.ab$ $\text{line passing through two vertices}$
ac	$S.AB.ca$ idem.
ad	$S.AB.ad$ idem.
bc	$S.AB.bc$ idem.
bd	$S.AB.bd$ idem.
cd	$S.AB.cd$ idem.

14.1.1 Example: square attributes

```
\begin{tkzelements}
z.A      = point : new ( 0 , 0 )
z.B      = point : new ( 4 , 0 )
z.C      = point : new ( 4 , 4 )
z.D      = point : new ( 0 , 4 )
S.new    = square : new ( z.A , z.B , z.C,z.D )
z.I      = S.new.center
z.H      = S.new.proj
\end{tkzelements}
\begin{tikzpicture}
\tkzGetNodes
\tkzDrawCircles[orange](I,A,I,H)
\tkzDrawPolygon(A,B,C,D)
\tkzDrawPoints(A,B,C,D,H,I)
\tkzLabelPoints(A,B,H,I)
\tkzLabelPoints[above](C,D)
\tkzDrawSegments(I,B I,H)
\tkzLabelSegment[sloped](I,B){\pmpn{\tkzUseLua{S.new.exradius}}}
\tkzLabelSegment[sloped](I,H){\pmpn{\tkzUseLua{S.new.inradius}}}
\tkzLabelSegment[sloped](D,C){\pmpn{\tkzUseLua{S.new.side}}}
\end{tikzpicture}
```



14.2 Square methods

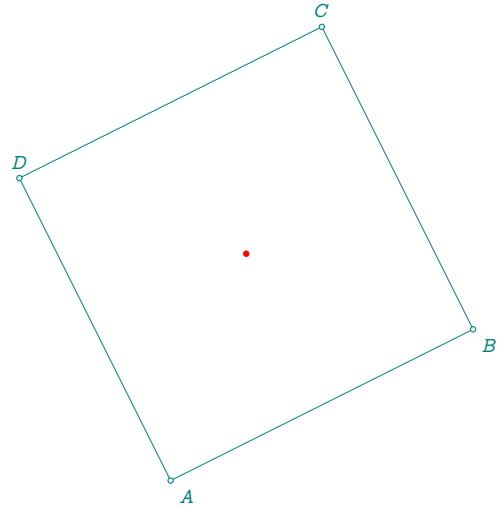
Table 16: Square methods.

Methods	Comments
rotation (zi,za)	S.IA = square : rotation (z.I,z.A) I square center A first vertex
side (za,zb)	S.AB = square : side (z.A,z.B) AB is the first side (direct)

14.2.1 Square with side method

```
\begin{tkzelements}
scale      = 2
z.A       = point : new ( 0 , 0 )
z.B       = point : new ( 2 , 1 )
S.side    = square : side (z.A,z.B)
z.B       = S.side.pb
z.C       = S.side.pc
z.D       = S.side.pd
z.I       = S.side.center
\end{tkzelements}

\begin{tikzpicture}
\tkzGetNodes
\tkzDrawPolygon(A,B,C,D)
\tkzDrawPoints(A,B,C,D)
\tkzLabelPoints(A,B)
\tkzLabelPoints[above](C,D)
\tkzDrawPoints[red](I)
\end{tikzpicture}
```



15 Class rectangle

15.1 Rectangle attributes

Points are created in the direct direction. A test is performed to check whether the points form a rectangle, otherwise compilation is blocked.

```
Creation R.ABCD = rectangle : new (z.A,z.B,z.C,z.D)
```

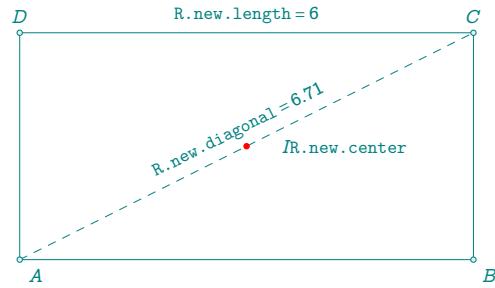
Table 17: rectangle attributes.

Attributes	Application
pa	<code>z.A = R.ABCD.pa</code>
pb	<code>z.B = R.ABCD.pb</code>
pc	<code>z.C = R.ABCD.pc</code>
pd	<code>z.D = R.ABCD.pd</code>
type	<code>R.ABCD.type= 'rectangle'</code>
center	<code>z.I = R.ABCD.center</code> center of the rectangle
length	<code>R.ABCD.length</code> the length
width	<code>R.ABCD.width</code> the width
diagonal	<code>R.ABCD.diagonal</code> diagonal length
ab	<code>R.ABCD.ab</code> line passing through two vertices
ac	<code>R.ABCD.ca</code> idem.
ad	<code>R.ABCD.ad</code> idem.
bc	<code>R.ABCD.bc</code> idem.
bd	<code>R.ABCD.bd</code> idem.
cd	<code>R.ABCD.cd</code> idem.

15.1.1 Example

```
\begin{tkzelements}
z.A = point : new ( 0 , 0 )
z.B = point : new ( 4 , 0 )
z.C = point : new ( 4 , 4 )
z.D = point : new ( 0 , 4 )
R.new = rectangle : new (z.A,z.B,z.C,z.D)
z.I = R.new.center
\end{tkzelements}

\begin{tikzpicture}
\tkzGetNodes
\tkzDrawPolygon(A,B,C,D)
\tkzDrawPoints(A,B,C,D)
\tkzLabelPoints(A,B)
\tkzLabelPoints[above](C,D)
\tkzDrawPoints[red](I)
\end{tikzpicture}
```



15.2 Rectangle methods

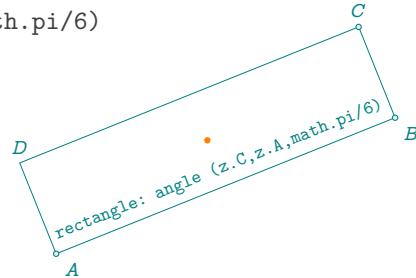
Table 18: Rectangle methods.

Methods	Comments	
angle (zi,za,angle)	R.ang = rectangle : angle (z.I,z.A); z.A vertex ; ang angle between 2 vertices	
gold (za,zb)	R.gold = rectangle : gold (z.A,z.B)	length/width = ϕ
diagonal (za,zc)	R.diag = rectangle : diagonal (z.I,z.A)	I square center A first vertex
side (za,zb,d)	S.IA = rectangle : side (z.I,z.A)	I square center A first vertex
get_lengths ()	S.IA = rectangle : get_lengths ()	I square center A first vertex

15.2.1 Angle method

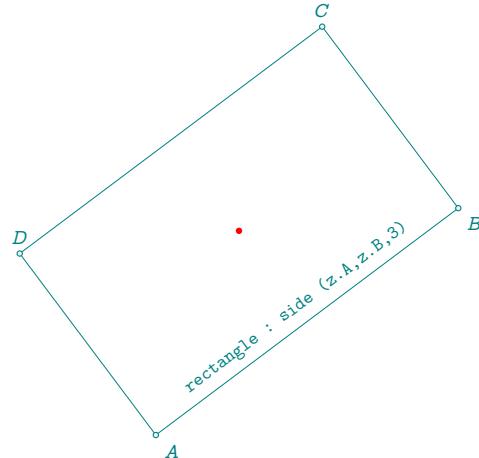
```
\begin{tkzelements}
scale   = .5
z.A     = point : new ( 0 , 0 )
z.B     = point : new ( 4 , 0 )
z.I     = point : new ( 4 , 3 )
P.ABCD = rectangle : angle ( z.I , z.A , math.pi/6)
z.B     = P.ABCD.pb
z.C     = P.ABCD.pc
z.D     = P.ABCD.pd
\end{tkzelements}
```

```
\begin{tikzpicture}
\tkzGetNodes
\tkzDrawPolygon(A,B,C,D)
\tkzDrawPoints(A,B,C)
\tkzLabelPoints(A,B,C,D)
\tkzDrawPoints[new](I)
\end{tikzpicture}
```



15.2.2 Side method

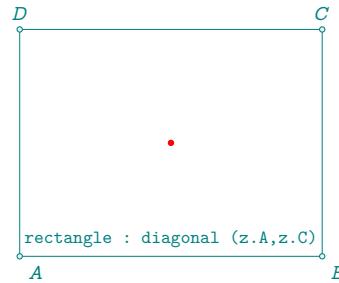
```
\begin{tkzelements}
z.A     = point : new ( 0 , 0 )
z.B     = point : new ( 4 , 3 )
R.side = rectangle : side (z.A,z.B,3)
z.C     = R.side.pc
z.D     = R.side.pd
z.I     = R.side.center
\end{tkzelements}
\begin{tikzpicture}
\tkzGetNodes
\tkzDrawPolygon(A,B,C,D)
\tkzDrawPoints(A,B,C,D)
\tkzLabelPoints(A,B)
\tkzLabelPoints[above](C,D)
\tkzDrawPoints[red](I)
\end{tikzpicture}
```



15.2.3 Diagonal method

```
\begin{tkzelements}
z.A      = point : new ( 0 , 0 )
z.C      = point : new ( 4 , 3 )
R.diag   = rectangle : diagonal (z.A,z.C)
z.B      = R.diag.pb
z.D      = R.diag.pd
z.I      = R.diag.center
\end{tkzelements}

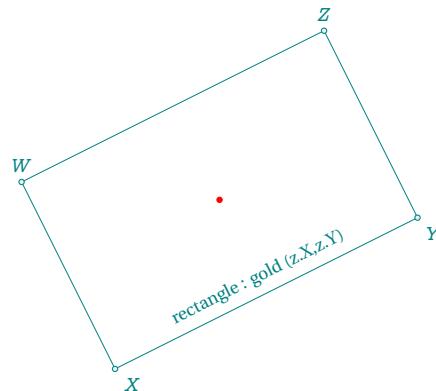
\begin{tikzpicture}
\tkzGetNodes
\tkzDrawPolygon(A,B,C,D)
\tkzDrawPoints(A,B,C,D)
\tkzLabelPoints(A,B)
\tkzLabelPoints[above](C,D)
\tkzDrawPoints[red](I)
\tkzLabelSegment[sloped,above](A,B){|rectangle : diagonal (z.A,z.C)|}
\end{tikzpicture}
```



15.2.4 Gold method

```
\begin{tkzelements}
z.X      = point : new ( 0 , 0 )
z.Y      = point : new ( 4 , 2 )
R.gold  = rectangle : gold (z.X,z.Y)
z.Z      = R.gold.pc
z.W      = R.gold.pd
z.I      = R.gold.center
\end{tkzelements}

\begin{tikzpicture}
\tkzGetNodes
\tkzDrawPolygon(X,Y,Z,W)
\tkzDrawPoints(X,Y,Z,W)
\tkzLabelPoints(X,Y)
\tkzLabelPoints[above](Z,W)
\tkzDrawPoints[red](I)
\tkzLabelSegment[sloped,above](X,Y){rectangle : gold (z.X,z.Y)}
\end{tikzpicture}
```



16 Class parallelogram

16.1 Parallelogram attributes

Points are created in the direct direction. A test is performed to check whether the points form a parallelogram, otherwise compilation is blocked.

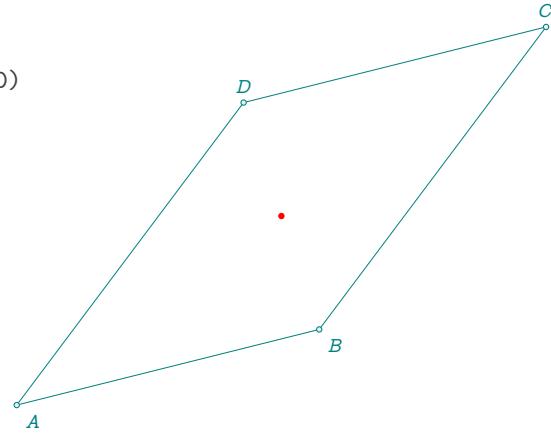
```
Creation P.new = parallelogram : new (z.A,z.B,z.C,z.D)
```

Table 19: Parallelogram attributes.

Attributes	Application
pa	z.A = P.new.pa
pb	z.B = P.new.pb
pc	z.C = P.new.pc
pd	z.D = P.new.pd
type	P.new.type= 'parallelogram'
i	z.I = P.new.i
ab	P.new.ab
ac	P.new.ca
ad	P.new.ad
bc	P.new.bc
bd	P.new.bd
cd	P.new.cd

16.1.1 Example: attributes

```
\begin{tkzelements}
z.A      = point : new ( 0 , 0 )
z.B      = point : new ( 4 , 1 )
z.C      = point : new ( 7 , 5 )
z.D      = point : new ( 3 , 4 )
P.new    = parallelogram : new (z.A,z.B,z.C,z.D)
z.B      = P.new.pb
z.C      = P.new.pc
z.D      = P.new.pd
z.I      = P.new.center
\end{tkzelements}
\begin{tikzpicture}
\tkzGetNodes
\tkzDrawPolygon(A,B,C,D)
\tkzDrawPoints(A,B,C,D)
\tkzLabelPoints(A,B)
\tkzLabelPoints[above](C,D)
\tkzDrawPoints[red](I)
\end{tikzpicture}
```



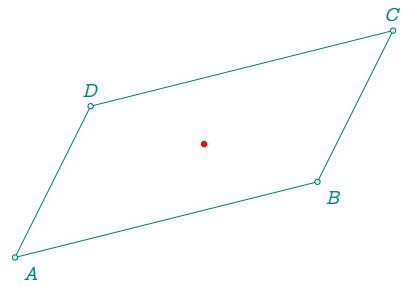
16.2 Parallelogram methods

Table 20: Parallelogram methods.

Methods	Comments
fourth (za,zb,zc)	completes a triangle by parallelogram (Refer to next example)

16.2.1 parallelogram with fourth method

```
\begin{tkzelements}
    scale = .75
z.A      = point : new ( 0 , 0 )
z.B      = point : new ( 4 , 1 )
z.C      = point : new ( 5 , 3 )
P.four   = parallelogram : fourth (z.A,z.B,z.C)
z.D      = P.four.pd
z.I      = P.four.center
\end{tkzelements}
\begin{tikzpicture}
\tkzGetNodes
\tkzDrawPolygon(A,B,C,D)
\tkzDrawPoints(A,B,C,D)
\tkzLabelPoints(A,B)
\tkzLabelPoints[above](C,D)
\tkzDrawPoints[red](I)
\end{tikzpicture}
```



17 Class regular polygon

17.1 regular_polygon attributes

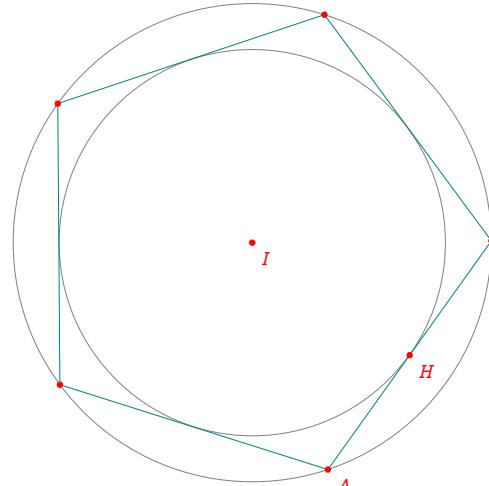
```
Creation RP.IA = regular_polygon : new (z.I,z.A,6)
```

Table 21: Regular_polygon attributes.

Attributes	Application
center	z.I = RP.IA.center
table	array containing all vertex affixes
through	first vertex
circle	defines the circle with center I passing through A
type	RP.IA.type= 'regular_polygon'
side	s = RP.IA.side; s = length of side
extradius	S.AB.exradius ; radius of the circumscribed circle
inradius	S.AB.inradius ; radius of the inscribed circle
proj	RP.IA.proj ; projection of the center on one side
angle	RP.IA.angle ; angle formed by the center and 2 consecutive vertices

17.1.1 Pentagon

```
\begin{tkzelements}
z.O = point: new (0,0)
z.I = point: new (1,3)
z.A = point: new (2,0)
RP.five = regular_polygon : new (z.I,z.A,5)
RP.five : name ("P_")
C.ins = circle: radius (z.I,RP.five.inradius)
z.H = RP.five.proj
\end{tkzelements}
\begin{tikzpicture}
\def\nb{\tkzUseLua{RP.five.nb}}
\tkzGetNodes
\tkzDrawCircles(I,A,I,H)
\tkzDrawPolygon(P_1,P_...,P_nb)
\tkzDrawPoints[red](P_1,P_...,P_nb,H,I)
\tkzLabelPoints[red](I,A,H)
\end{tikzpicture}
```



17.2 regular_polygon methods

Table 22: Circle methods.

Methods	Comments
new(O,A,n)	RP.five = regular_polygon : new (z.I,z.A,5) ; I center A first vertex 5 sides
Circle	
incircle ()	C.IH = RP.five : incircle ()
Points	
name (string)	Refer to 17.1.1

18 Class vector

In fact, they are more a class of oriented segments than vectors in the strict mathematical sense.

A vector is defined by giving two points (i.e. two affixes). `V.AB = vector : new (z.A,z.B)` creates the vector \vec{AB} , i.e. the oriented segment with origin A representing a vector. A few rudimentary operations are defined, such as sum, subtraction and multiplication by a scalar.

The sum is defined as follows:

Let $V.AB + V.CD$ result in a vector $V.AE$ defined as follows

If $\overrightarrow{CD} = \overrightarrow{BE}$ then $\overrightarrow{AB} + \overrightarrow{CD} = \overrightarrow{AB} + \overrightarrow{BE} = \overrightarrow{AE}$

Creation `V.AB = vector: new (z.A,z.B)`

```

z.A = ...
z.B = ...
z.C = ...
z.D = ...
V.AB = vector : new (z.A,z.B)
V.CD = vector : new (z.C,z.D)
V.AE = V.AB + V.CD -- possible V.AB : add (V.CD)
z.E = V.AE.head -- we recover the final point (head)

```

18.1 Attributes of a vector

Table 23: Vector attributes.

Attributes	Application	Example
tail	<code>V.AB.t = z.A</code>	Refer to (7.2.2)
head	<code>V.AB.head = z.B</code>	Refer to (7.2.2)
type	<code>V.AB.type = 'vector'</code>	
slope	<code>V.AB.slope</code>	Refer to (18.1.1)
length	<code>V.AB.norm</code>	Refer to (18.1.1)
mtx	<code>V.AB mtx</code>	The result is a column matrix <code>{{{V.AB.t}}, {{V.AB.h}}}</code>

18.1.1 Example vector attributes

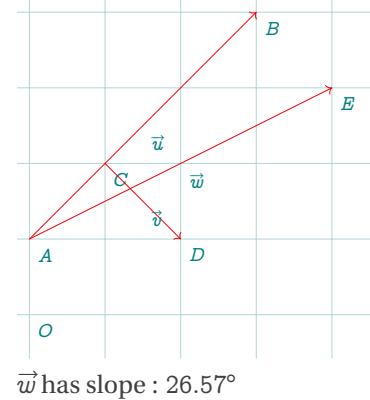
```
\begin{tkzelements}
z.O      = point: new (0,0)
z.A      = point: new (0,1)
z.B      = point: new (3,4)
L.AB     = line : new ( z.A , z.B )
z.C      = point: new (1,2)
z.D      = point: new (2,1)
u        = vector : new (z.A,z.B)
v        = vector : new (z.C,z.D)
w = u+v
z.E = w.head
\end{tkzelements}
\begin{tikzpicture}[gridded]
\tkzGetNodes(A,B,C,D,O,E)
\tkzDrawSegments[->,red](A,B C,D A,E)
\tkzLabelSegment(A,B){$\overrightarrow{u}$}
\tkzLabelSegment(C,D){$\overrightarrow{v}$}
\tkzLabelSegment(A,E){$\overrightarrow{w}$}
\end{tikzpicture}
$\overrightarrow{w}$ has slope :
```

\overrightarrow{w} has slope : $\text{tkzDN}\{\text{tkzUseLua}\{\text{math.deg}(w.\text{slope})\}\}^\circ$

18.2 Methods of the class vector

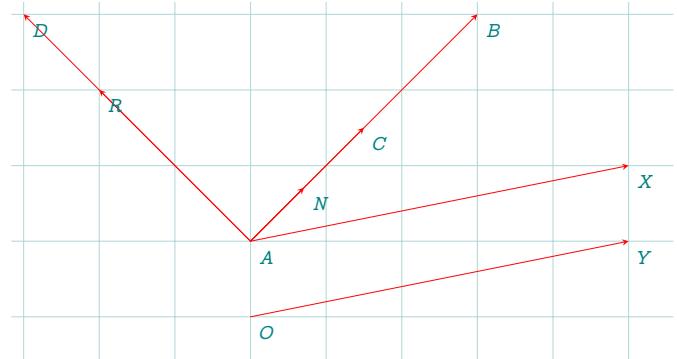
Table 24: Methods of the class vector.

Metamethods	Application
<code>__add (u,v)</code>	$V.AB + V.CD$
<code>__sub (u,v)</code>	$V.AB - V.CD$
<code>__unm (u)</code>	$V.CD = -V.AB$
<code>__mul (k,u)</code>	$V.CD = k*V.AB$
Methods	Application
<code>new(pt, pt)</code>	$V.AB = \text{vector: new } (z.A,z.B)$
<code>normalize(V)</code>	$V.AB : \text{normalize} ()$
<code>orthogonal(d)</code>	$V.AB : \text{orthogonal} (d)$
<code>scale(d)</code>	$V.CD = V.AB : \text{scale} (2)$
<code>at (V)</code>	$V.DB = V.AC : \text{at} (z.D)$
	$\overrightarrow{CD} = 2\overrightarrow{AB}$
	$\overrightarrow{DB} = \overrightarrow{AC}$



18.2.1 Example of methods

```
\begin{tkzelements}
z.O = point: new (0,0)
z.A = point: new (0,1)
z.B = point: new (3,4)
V.AB = vector: new (z.A,z.B)
V.AC = V.AB : scale (.5)
z.C = V.AC.head
V.AD = V.AB : orthogonal ()
z.D = V.AD.head
V.AN = V.AB : normalize ()
z.N = V.AN.head
V.AR = V.AB : orthogonal(2*math.sqrt(2))
z.R = V.AR.head
V.AX = 2*V.AC - V.AR
z.X = V.AX.head
V.OY = V.AX : at (z.O)
z.Y = V.OY.head
\end{tkzelements}
\begin{tikzpicture}[gridded]
\tkzGetNodes
\tkzDrawSegments[>=stealth,->,red](A,B A,C A,D A,N A,R A,X O,Y)
\tkzLabelPoints(A,B,C,D,O,N,R,X,Y)
\end{tikzpicture}
```



19 Class matrix

The matrix class is currently experimental, and its attribute and method names have not yet been finalized, indicating that this class is still evolving. Certain connections have been made with other classes, such as the point class. Additionally, a new attribute, `mtx`, has been included, associating a column matrix with the point, where the elements correspond to the point's coordinates in the original base. Similarly, an attribute has been added to the vector class, where `mtx` represents a column matrix consisting of the two affixes that compose the vector.

This matrix class has been created to avoid the need for an external library, and has been adapted to plane transformations. It allows you to use complex numbers.

☞ To display matrices, you'll need to load the `amsmath` package.

☞ While some methods are valid for any matrix size, the majority are reserved for square matrices of order 2 and 3.

19.1 Matrix creation

- The first method is: (Refer to 19.5.1)

```
M = matrix: new {{a,b},{c,d}}
or M = matrix: new {{a,b},{c,d}}
a, b, c, et d being real or complex numbers.
```

$$M = \begin{bmatrix} 3 & 2.25 \\ 4 & 3.90 \end{bmatrix}$$

- It is also possible to obtain a square matrix with: (Refer to 19.5.7)

```
M = matrix : square (2,a,b,c,d)
```

- In the case of a column vector: (Refer to 19.5.2)

```
V = matrix : vector (1,2,3)
```

$$V = \begin{bmatrix} 1 \\ 2 \\ 3 \end{bmatrix}$$

- Homogeneous transformation matrix (Refer to 19.5.4)

The objective is to generate a matrix with homogeneous coordinates capable of transforming a coordinate system through rotation, translation, and scaling. To achieve this, it is necessary to define both the rotation angle, the coordinates of the new origin and the scaling factors.

```
H = matrix : htm (math.pi/3,1,2,2,1)
```

$$H = \begin{bmatrix} 1 & -0.87 & 1 \\ 0.87 & 0.50 & 2 \\ 0 & 0 & 1 \end{bmatrix}$$

19.2 Display a matrix: method print

This method (Refer to 19.5.8) is necessary to control the results, so here are a few explanations on how to use it. It can be used on real or complex matrices, square or not. A few options allow you to format the results. You need to load the `amsmath` package to use the "print" method. Without this package, it is possible to display the contents of the matrix without formatting with `print_array (M)`

```
\begin{tkzelements}
M = matrix : new {{1,-1},{2,0}}
M : print ()
\end{tkzelements}
```

$$\begin{bmatrix} 1 & -1 \\ 2 & 0 \end{bmatrix}$$

19.3 Attributes of a matrix

Table 25: Matrix attributes.

Attributes	Application
set	M.set = {{a,b},{c,d}} table of tables
rows	M.rows number of rows
cols	M.cols number of columns
type	M.type = "matrix" the type of object
det	M.det determinant of a square matrix or nil

19.3.1 Attribute set

A simple array such as `{{{1,2},{2,-1}}}` is often considered a "matrix". In "tkz-elements", we'll consider M defined by `matrix : new ({{1,1},{0,2}})` as a matrix and M.set as an array (`M.set = {{1,1},{0,2}}`).

You can access a particular element of the matrix, for example: `M.set[2][1]` gives 0.

`\tkzUseLua{M.set[2][1]}` is the expression that displays 2.

The number of rows is accessed with `M.rows` and the number of columns with `M.cols`, here's an example:

```
\begin{tkzelements}
M = matrix : new ({{1,2,3},{4,5,6}})
M : print ()
tex.print("Rows: "..M.rows)
tex.print("Cols: "..M.cols)
\end{tkzelements}
```

$$\begin{bmatrix} 1 & 2 & 3 \\ 4 & 5 & 6 \end{bmatrix}$$

Rows: 2 Cols: 3

19.3.2 Determinant with real numbers

The matrix must be square. This library was created for matrices of dimension 2 or 3, but it is possible to work with larger sizes. `det` is an attribute of the "matrix" object, but the determinant can also be obtained with the function `determinant(M)`.

```
\begin{tkzelements}
M = matrix : square (3,1,1,0,2,-1,-2,1,-1,2)
M : print ()
tex.print ('\\\\\\')
tex.print ("Its determinant is: " .. M.det)
\end{tkzelements}
```

$$\begin{bmatrix} 1 & 1 & 0 \\ 2 & -1 & -2 \\ 1 & -1 & 2 \end{bmatrix}$$

Its determinant is: -10.0

19.3.3 Determinant with complex numbers

```
\begin{tkzelements}
a = point :new (1,-2)
b = point :new (0,1)
c = point :new (1,1)
d = point :new (1,-1)
A = matrix : new ({{a, b}, {c,d}})
tex.print(tostring(A.det))
\end{tkzelements}
```

$$-4.00i$$

19.4 Metamethods for the matrices

Conditions on matrices must be valid for certain operations to be possible.

Table 26: Matrix metamethods.

Metamethods	Application
<code>__add(M1, M2)</code>	<code>M1 + M2</code>
<code>__sub(M1, M2)</code>	<code>M1 - M2</code>
<code>__unm(M)</code>	<code>- M</code>
<code>__mul(M1, M2)</code>	<code>M1 * M2</code>
<code>__pow(M, n)</code>	<code>M ^ n</code> n integer > or < 0 or 'T'
<code>__tostroing(M, n)</code>	<code>tex.print(tostring(M))</code> displays the matrix
<code>__eq(M1, M2)</code>	true or false

19.4.1 Addition and subtraction of matrices

To simplify the entries, I've used a few functions to simplify the displays.

```
\begin{tkzelements}
A = matrix : new ({ {1,2}, {2,-1} })
B = matrix : new ({ {-1,0}, {1,3} })
S = A + B
D = A - B
dsp(A, 'A')
nl() nl()
dsp(B, 'B')
nl() nl()
dsp(S, 'S') sym(" = ") dsp(A) sym(' + ') dsp(B)
nl() nl()
dsp(D, 'D') sym(" = ") dsp(A) sym(' - ') dsp(B)
\end{tkzelements}
```

$$\begin{aligned} A &= \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 2 \\ 2 & -1 \end{bmatrix} \\ B &= \begin{bmatrix} -1 & 0 \\ 1 & 3 \end{bmatrix} \\ S &= \begin{bmatrix} 0 & 2 \\ 3 & 2 \end{bmatrix} = \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 2 \\ 2 & -1 \end{bmatrix} + \begin{bmatrix} -1 & 0 \\ 1 & 3 \end{bmatrix} \\ D &= \begin{bmatrix} 2 & 2 \\ 1 & -4 \end{bmatrix} = \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 2 \\ 2 & -1 \end{bmatrix} - \begin{bmatrix} -1 & 0 \\ 1 & 3 \end{bmatrix} \end{aligned}$$

19.4.2 Multiplication and power of matrices

To simplify the entries, I've used a few functions. You can find their definitions in the sources section of this documentation.

```
\begin{tkzelements}
A = matrix : new ({ {1,2}, {2,-1} })
B = matrix : new ({ {-1,0}, {1,3} })
P = A * B
I = A^-1
C = A^3
K = 2 * A
T = A^' T'
\end{tkzelements}
```

$$\begin{aligned} P &= \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 6 \\ -3 & -3 \end{bmatrix} = \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 2 \\ 2 & -1 \end{bmatrix} * \begin{bmatrix} -1 & 0 \\ 1 & 3 \end{bmatrix} \\ A^{-1} &= \begin{bmatrix} 0.20 & 0.40 \\ 0.40 & -0.20 \end{bmatrix} \\ K &= \begin{bmatrix} 2 & 4 \\ 4 & -2 \end{bmatrix} \\ A^T &= \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 2 \\ 2 & -1 \end{bmatrix} \end{aligned}$$

19.4.3 Metamethod eq

Test whether two matrices are equal or identical.

19.5 Methods of the class matrix

Table 27: Matrix methods.

Functions	Comments
new(...)	M = matrix : new ({1,2},{2,-1})
square()	M = matrix : square (2,1,2,2,-1)
vector()	M = matrix : vector (2,1)
htm()	M = matrix : htm (2,1,2,2,-1)
Methods	Comments
print(s,n)	M : print ()
htm_apply(...)	M : htm_apply (...)
get()	M : get (i,j)
inverse()	M : inverse ()
adjugate()	M : adjugate ()
transpose()	M : transpose ()
is_diagonal()	true or false
is_orthogonal()	true or false
homogenization()	M : homogenization ()

19.5.1 Function new

This is the main method for creating a matrix. Here's an example of a 2x3 matrix with complex coefficients:

```
\begin{tkzelements}
a = point : new (1,Q)
b = point : new (1,1)
c = point : new (-1,1)
d = point : new (Q,1)
e = point : new (1,-1)
f = point : new (Q,-1)
M = matrix : new ({a,b,c},{d,e,f})
M : print ()
\end{tkzelements}
```

$$\begin{bmatrix} 1 & 1+i & -1+i \\ i & 1-i & i \end{bmatrix}$$

19.5.2 Function vector

The special case of a column matrix, frequently used to represent a vector, can be treated as follows:

```
\begin{tkzelements}
M = matrix : vector (1,2,3)
M : print ()
\end{tkzelements}
```

$$\begin{bmatrix} 1 \\ 2 \\ 3 \end{bmatrix}$$

19.5.3 Method homogenization

homogenization of vector: the aim is to be able to use a homogeneous transformation matrix

Let's take a point A such that z.A = point : new (2,-1). In order to apply a htm matrix, we need to perform a few operations on this point. The first is to determine the vector (matrix) associated with the point. This is straightforward, since there's a point attribute called mtx which gives this vector:

```
z.A = point : new (2,-1)
V = z.A.mtx : homogenization ()
```

which gives:

```
\begin{tkzelements}
pi = math.pi
M = matrix : htm (pi/4 , 3 , 1)
z.A = point : new (2,-1)
V = z.A.mtx : homogenization ()
z.A.mtx : print ()
tex.print ('then after homogenization: ')
V : print ()
\end{tkzelements}
```

$$\begin{bmatrix} 2 \\ -1 \end{bmatrix} \text{ then after homogenization: } \begin{bmatrix} 2 \\ -1 \\ 1 \end{bmatrix}$$

19.5.4 Function `htm: homogeneous transformation matrix`

There are several ways of using this transformation. First, we need to create a matrix that can associate a rotation with a translation.

The main method is to create the matrix:

```
pi = math.pi
M = matrix : htm (pi/4 , 3 , 1)
```

A 3x3 matrix is created which combines a $\pi/4$ rotation and a $\vec{t} = (3, 1)$ translation.

$$\begin{bmatrix} 0.71 & -0.71 & 3 \\ 0.71 & 0.71 & 1 \\ 0 & 0 & 1 \end{bmatrix}$$

Now we can apply the matrix M. Let A be the point defined here: 19.5.3. By homogenization, we obtain the column matrix V.

```
W = A * V
```

$$\begin{bmatrix} 0.71 & -0.71 & 3 \\ 0.71 & 0.71 & 1 \\ 0 & 0 & 1 \end{bmatrix} \begin{bmatrix} 2 \\ -1 \\ 1 \end{bmatrix} = \begin{bmatrix} 5.12 \\ 1.71 \\ 1 \end{bmatrix}$$

All that remains is to extract the coordinates of the new point.

19.5.5 Method `get_htm_point`

In the previous section, we obtained the W matrix. Now we need to obtain the point it defines.

The method `get_htm_point` extracts a point from a vector obtained after applying a `htm` matrix.

```
\begin{tkzelements}
```

```
W : print ()
z.P = get_htm_point(W)
tex.print("The affix of $P$ is: ")
tex.print(display(z.P))
\end{tkzelements}
```

$$\begin{bmatrix} 5.12 \\ 1.71 \\ 1 \end{bmatrix} \text{ The affix of } P \text{ is: } 5.12+1.71i$$

```
\end{tkzelements}
```

19.5.6 Method `htm_apply`

The above operations can be simplified by using the `htm_apply` method directly at point A.

```
z.Ap = M: htm_apply (z.A)
```

Then the method `htm_apply` transforms a point, a list of points or an object.

```
\begin{tkzelements}
pi      = math.pi
M       = matrix : htm (pi/4 , 3 , 1 )
z.0     = point : new (0,0)
V.ori   = z.0.mtx : homogenization ()
z.I     = point : new (1,0)
z.J     = point : new (0,1)
z.A     = point: new (2,0)
z.B     = point: new (1,2)
L.AB    = line : new (z.A,z.B)
z.Op,z.Ip,z.Jp = M : htm_apply (z.0,z.I,z.J)
L.ApBp  = M : htm_apply (L.AB)
z.Ap    = L.ApBp.pa
z.Bp    = L.ApBp.pb
z.K     = point : new (2,2)
T       = triangle : new ( z.I , z.J , z.K )
Tp     = M : htm_apply (T)
z.Kp   = Tp.pc
\end{tkzelements}
```

New cartesian coordinates system:

```
\begin{tkzelements}
pi = math.pi
tp = tex.print
nl = '\\\\'
a = point(1,0)
b = point(0,1)
R = matrix : htm (pi/5,2,1)
R : print () tp(nl)
v = matrix : vector (1,2)
v : print ()
v.h = v : homogenization ()
v.h : print () tp(nl)
V = R * v.h
V : print ()
z.N = get_htm_point(V)
tex.print(display(z.N))
\end{tkzelements}
```

19.5.7 Function square

We have already seen this method in the presentation of matrices. We first need to give the order of the matrix, then the coefficients, row by row.

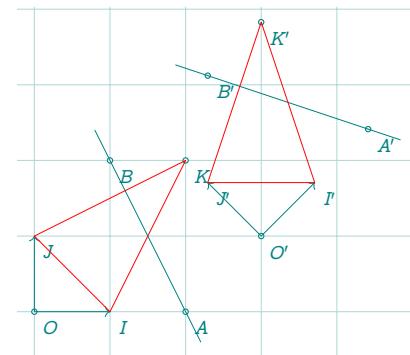
```
\begin{tkzelements}
M = matrix : square (2,2,3,-5,4)
M : print ()
\end{tkzelements}
```

$$\begin{bmatrix} 0.81 & -0.59 & 2 \\ 0.59 & 0.81 & 1 \\ 0 & 0 & 1 \end{bmatrix}$$

$$\begin{bmatrix} 1 \\ 2 \\ 1 \end{bmatrix}$$

$$\begin{bmatrix} 1.63 \\ 3.21 \\ 1 \end{bmatrix}$$

$$1.63+3.21i$$



19.5.8 Method print

With the `amsmath` package loaded, this method can be used. By default, the `bmatrix` environment is selected, although you can choose from `matrix`, `pmatrix`, `Bmatrix`, "vmatrix", "Vmatrix". Another option lets you set the number of digits after the decimal point. The "tkz_dc" global variable is used to set the number of decimal places. Here's an example:

```
\begin{tkzelements}
M = matrix : new ({{math.sqrt(2),math.sqrt(3)},{math.sqrt(4),math.sqrt(5)}})
M : print ('pmatrix')
\end{tkzelements}

\begin{pmatrix} 1.414 & 1.732 \\ 2 & 2.236 \end{pmatrix}
```

You can also display the matrix as a simple array using the `print_array` (`M`) function. refer to the next example. In the case of a square matrix, it is possible to transmit a list of values whose first element is the order of the matrix.

```
\begin{tkzelements}
M = matrix : square (2,1,0,0,2)
M : print ()
\end{tkzelements}
```

$$\begin{bmatrix} 1 & 0 \\ 0 & 2 \end{bmatrix}$$

19.5.9 Display a table or array: function `print_array`

We'll need to display results, so let's look at the different ways of displaying them, and distinguish the differences between arrays and matrices.

Below, `A` is an array. It can be displayed as a simple array or as a matrix, but we can't use the attributes and `A : print ()` is not possible because `A` is not an object of the class `matrix`. If you want to display an array like a matrix you can use the function `print_matrix` (refer to the next example).

```
\begin{tkzelements}
A = {{1,2},{1,-1}}
tex.print ('A = ') print_array (A)
tex.print (' or ')
print_matrix (A)
M = matrix : new ({{1,1},{0,2}})
tex.print ('\\\\\\')
tex.print ('M = ') M : print ()
\end{tkzelements}
```

$$A = \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 2 \\ 1 & -1 \end{bmatrix} \text{ or } M = \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 1 \\ 0 & 2 \end{bmatrix}$$

19.5.10 Get an element of a matrix: method `get`

```
\begin{tkzelements}
M = matrix : new {{1,2},{2,-1}}
S = M: get(1,1) + M: get(2,2)      0
tex.print(S)
\end{tkzelements}
```

19.5.11 Inverse matrix: : method `inverse`

```
\begin{tkzelements}
A = matrix : new ({{1,2},{2,-1}})
tex.print("Inverse of $A = $")
B = A : inverse ()
B : print ()
\end{tkzelements}
```

$$\text{Inverse of } A = \begin{bmatrix} 0.43 & 0.29 \\ 0.29 & -0.14 \end{bmatrix}$$

19.5.12 Inverse matrix with power syntax

```
\begin{tkzelements}
M = matrix : new ({ {1,0,1}, {1,2, 1}, {0,-1,2} })
tex.print("$M = $") print_matrix (M)
tex.print('\\\\\\')
tex.print("Inverse of $M = M^{-1} = $")
print_matrix (M^-1)
\end{tkzelements}
```

$$M = \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 0 & 1 \\ 1 & 2 & 1 \\ 0 & -1 & 2 \end{bmatrix}$$

$$\text{Inverse of } M = M^{-1} = \begin{bmatrix} 1.25 & -0.25 & -0.50 \\ -0.50 & 0.50 & 0 \\ -0.25 & 0.25 & 0.50 \end{bmatrix}$$

19.5.13 Transpose matrix: method transpose

A transposed matrix can be accessed with A: transpose () or with A^{'T'}.

```
\begin{tkzelements}
A = matrix : new ({ {1,2}, {2,-1} })
AT = A : transpose ()
tex.print("$A^{'T'} = $")
AT : print ()
\end{tkzelements}
```

$$A^{'T'} = \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 2 \\ 2 & -1 \end{bmatrix}$$

Remark: (A ^{'T'})^{'T'} = A

19.5.14 Method method adjugate

```
\begin{tkzelements}
N = matrix : new {{1, 0, 3}, {2, 1, 0}, {-1, 2, 0}}
tex.print('N = ') print_matrix(N)
tex.print('\\\\\\')
N.a = N : adjugate ()
N.i = N * N.a
tex.print('adj(N) = ') N.a : print ()
tex.print('\\\\\\')
tex.print('N $\\times$ adj(N) = ') print_matrix(N.i)
tex.print('\\\\\\')
tex.print('det(N) = ') tex.print(N.det)
\end{tkzelements}
```

$$N = \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 0 & 3 \\ 2 & 1 & 0 \\ -1 & 2 & 0 \end{bmatrix} \quad \text{adj}(N) = \begin{bmatrix} 0 & 6 & -3 \\ 0 & 3 & 6 \\ 5 & -2 & 1 \end{bmatrix}$$

$$N \times \text{adj}(N) = \begin{bmatrix} 15 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 15 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 15 \end{bmatrix}$$

$$\det(N) = 15.0$$

19.5.15 Method method identity

Creating the identity matrix order 3

```
\begin{tkzelements}
Id_3 = matrix : identity (3)
Id_3 : print ()
\end{tkzelements}
```

$$\begin{bmatrix} 1 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 1 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 1 \end{bmatrix}$$

19.5.16 Diagonalization: method `diagonalize`

For the moment, this method only concerns matrices of order 2.

```
\begin{tkzelements}
A = matrix : new {{5,-3}, {6,-4}}
tex.print('A = ') A : print ()
D,P = A : diagonalize ()
tex.print('D = ') D : print ()
tex.print('P = ') P : print ()
R = P^(-1)*A*P
tex.print('\\\\\\')
tex.print('Test: $D = P^{-1}AP = $ ')
R : print ()
tex.print('\\\\\\')
tex.print('Verification: $P^{-1}P = $ ')
T = P^(-1)*P
T : print ()
\end{tkzelements}
```

$$A = \begin{bmatrix} 5 & -3 \\ 6 & -4 \end{bmatrix} D = \begin{bmatrix} 2 & 0 \\ 0 & -1 \end{bmatrix} P = \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 1 \\ 1 & 2 \end{bmatrix}$$

$$\text{Test: } D = P^{-1}AP = \begin{bmatrix} 2 & 0 \\ 0 & -1 \end{bmatrix}$$

$$\text{Verification: } P^{-1}P = \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 0 \\ 0 & 1 \end{bmatrix}$$

19.5.17 Method `is_orthogonal`

The method returns `true` if the matrix is orthogonal and `false` otherwise.

```
\begin{tkzelements}
local cos = math.cos
local sin = math.sin
local pi = math.pi
A = matrix : new ({cos(pi/6),-sin(pi/6)}, {sin(pi/6),cos(pi/6)})
A : print ()
bool = A : is_orthogonal ()
tex.print('\\\\\\')
if bool
then
    tex.print("The matrix is orthogonal")
else
    tex.print("The matrix is not orthogonal")
end
tex.print('\\\\\\')
tex.print('Test: $A^T = A^{-1} ?$')
print_matrix(transposeMatrix (A))
tex.print('=')
inv_matrix (A) : print ()
\end{tkzelements}
```

$\begin{bmatrix} 0.87 & -0.50 \\ 0.50 & 0.87 \end{bmatrix}$
The matrix is orthogonal

$$\text{Test: } A^T = A^{-1} ? \begin{bmatrix} 0.87 & 0.50 \\ -0.50 & 0.87 \end{bmatrix} = \begin{bmatrix} 0.87 & 0.50 \\ -0.50 & 0.87 \end{bmatrix}$$

19.5.18 Method `is_diagonal`

The method returns `true` if the matrix is diagonal and `false` otherwise.

20 Math constants and functions

Table 28: Math constants and functions.

contants or functions	Comments
tkzphi	constant $\varphi = (1 + \sqrt{5})/2$
tkzinvphi	constant $1/\varphi = 1/tkzphi$
tkzsqrtpi	constant $\sqrt{\varphi} = \sqrt{math.sqrt(tkzphi)}$
length (a,b)	point.abs(a-b) Refer to (8.2.2)
islinear (z1,z2,z3)	Are the points aligned? $(z2-z1) \parallel (z3-z1)$?
isortho (z1,z2,z3)	$(z2-z1) \perp (z3-z1)$? boolean
get_angle (z1,z2,z3)	the vertex is z1 Refer to (20.8)
bisector (z1,z2,z3)	$L.Aa = \text{bisector}(z.A, z.B, z.C)$ from A (20.8)
bisector_ext (z1,z2,z3)	$L.Aa = \text{bisector_ext}(z.A, z.B, z.C)$ from A
altitude (z1,z2,z3)	altitude from z1
set_lua_to_tex (list)	set_lua_to_tex('a','n') defines \a and \n
tkzUseLua (variable)	\textbackslash tkzUseLua{a} prints the value of a
value (v)	apply scale * value
real (v)	apply value /scale
angle_normalize (an)	to get a value between 0 and 2π
barycenter ({z1,n1},{z2,n2}, ...)	barycenter of list of points
solve_quadratic (a,b,c)	gives the solution of $ax^2 + bx + c = 0$ a,b,c real or complex (Refer to 20.12.1)

20.1 Length of a segment

`length(z.A,z.B)` is a shortcut for `point.abs(z.A-z.B)`. This avoids the need to use complexes.

20.2 Harmonic division with tkzphi

```
\begin{tkzelements}
  scale =.5
  z.a = point: new(0,0)
  z.b = point: new(8,0)
  L.ab = line: new (z.a,z.b)
  z.m,z.n = L.ab: harmonic_both (tkzphi)
\end{tkzelements}
\begin{tikzpicture}
  \tkzGetNodes
  \tkzDrawLine[add= .2 and .2](a,n)
  \tkzDrawPoints(a,b,n,m)
  \tkzLabelPoints(a,b,n,m)
\end{tikzpicture}
```



20.3 Function `islinear`

```
\begin{tkzelements}
z.a = point: new (1, 1)
z.b = point: new (2, 2)
z.c = point: new (4, 4)
if islinear (z.a,z.b,z.c) then
    z.d = point: new (0, 0)
else
    z.d = point: new (-1, -1)
end
\end{tkzelements}
\begin{tikzpicture}
\tkzGetNodes
\tkzDrawPoints(a,...,d)
\tkzLabelPoints(a,...,d)
\end{tikzpicture}
```

20.4 Function `value`

value to apply scaling if necessary

If `scale = 1.2` with `a = value(5)` the actual value of `a` will be $5 \times 1.2 = 6$.

20.5 Function `real`

If `scale = 1.2` with `a = 6` then `real(a) = 6 / 1.2 = 5`.

20.6 Transfer from lua to \TeX

It's possible to transfer variable from Lua to \TeX with `\tkzUseLua`.

```
\begin{tkzelements}
z.A      = point : new (0 , 0)
z.B      = point : new (3 , 2)
z.C      = point : new (2 , 5)
L.AB    = line : new (z.A,z.B)
d       = L.AB : distance (z.C)
l       = L.AB.length
z.H      = L.AB : projection (z.C)
\end{tkzelements}
\begin{tikzpicture}
\tkzGetNodes
\tkzDrawLines(A,B C,H)
\tkzDrawPoints(A,B,C,H)
\tkzLabelPoints(A,B,C,H)
\tkzLabelSegment[above right,draw](C,H){$CH = \tkzUseLua{d}$}
\tkzLabelSegment[below right,draw](A,B){$AB = \tkzUseLua{l}$}
\end{tikzpicture}
```

20.7 Normalized angles : Slope of lines (ab), (ac) and (ad)

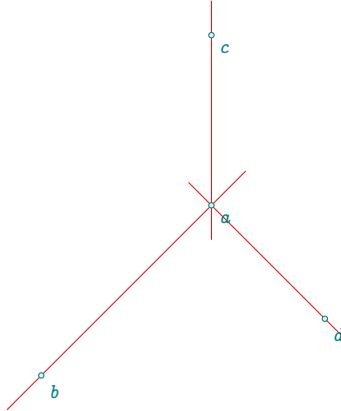
```
\begin{tkzelements}
z.a      = point: new(0, 0)
z.b      = point: new(-3, -3)
z.c      = point: new(0, 3)
z.d      = point: new(2, -2)
\end{tkzelements}
```

```

angle      = point.arg (z.b-z.a)
tex.print('slope of (ab) : '..tostring(angle)..'\\\\\\')
tex.print('slope normalized of (ab) : '..tostring(angle\_normalize(angle))..'\\\\\\')
angle      = point.arg (z.c-z.a)
tex.print('slope of (ac) : '..tostring(angle)..'\\\\\\')
tex.print('slope normalized of (ac) : '..tostring(angle\_normalize(angle))..'\\\\\\')
angle      = point.arg (z.d-z.a)
tex.print('slope of (ad) : '..tostring(angle)..'\\\\\\')
tex.print('slope normalized of (acd) : '..tostring(angle\_normalize(angle))..'\\\\\\')
\end{tkzelements}
\begin{tikzpicture}
\tkzGetNodes
\tkzDrawLines[red](a,b a,c a,d)
\tkzDrawPoints(a,b,c,d)
\tkzLabelPoints(a,b,c,d)
\end{tikzpicture}

slope of (ab) : -2.3561944901923
slope normalized of (ab) : 3.9269908169872
slope of (ac) : 1.5707963267949
slope normalized of (ac) : 1.5707963267949
slope of (ad) : -0.78539816339745
slope normalized of (ad) : 5.4977871437821

```

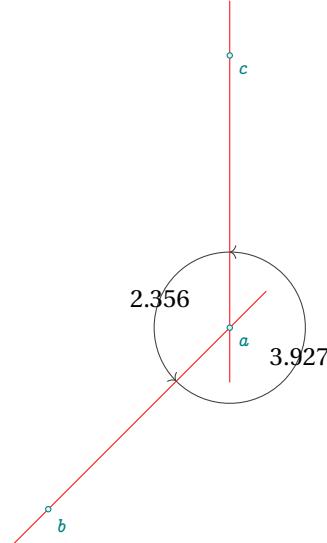


20.8 Get angle

The function `get_angle (a,b,c)` gives the angle normalized of (\vec{ab}, \vec{ac}) .

```
\begin{tkzelements}
z.a = point: new(0, 0)
z.b = point: new(-2, -2)
z.c = point: new(0, 3)
angcb = tkzround ( get_angle (z.a,z.c,z.b),3)
angbc = tkzround ( get_angle (z.a,z.b,z.c),3)
\end{tkzelements}

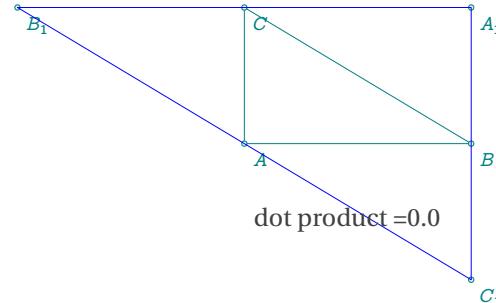
\begin{tikzpicture}
\tkzGetNodes
\tkzDrawLines[red](a,b a,c)
\tkzDrawPoints(a,b,c)
\tkzLabelPoints(a,b,c)
\tkzMarkAngle[>](c,a,b)
\tkzLabelAngle(c,a,b){\tkzUseLua{angcb}}
\tkzMarkAngle[>](b,a,c)
\tkzLabelAngle(b,a,c){\tkzUseLua{angbc}}
\end{tikzpicture}
```



20.9 Dot or scalar product

```
\begin{tkzelements}
z.A = point: new(0,0)
z.B = point: new(5,0)
z.C = point: new(0,3)
T.ABC = triangle: new (z.A,z.B,z.C)
z.A_1,
z.B_1,
z.C_1 = get_points (T.ABC: anti ())
x = dot_product (z.A,z.B,z.C)
\end{tkzelements}

\begin{tikzpicture}
\tkzGetNodes
\tkzDrawPolygon(A,B,C)
\tkzDrawPoints(A,B,C,A_1,B_1,C_1)
\tkzLabelPoints(A,B,C,A_1,B_1,C_1)
\tkzDrawPolygon[blue](A_1,B_1,C_1)
\tkzText[right](0,-1){dot product =\tkzUseLua{x}}
\end{tikzpicture}
```



The scalar product of the vectors \overrightarrow{AC} and \overrightarrow{AB} is equal to 0.0, so these vectors are orthogonal.

20.10 Alignment or orthogonality

With the functions `islinear` and `isortho`. `islinear(z.a,z.b,z.c)` gives true if the points a , b and c are aligned.

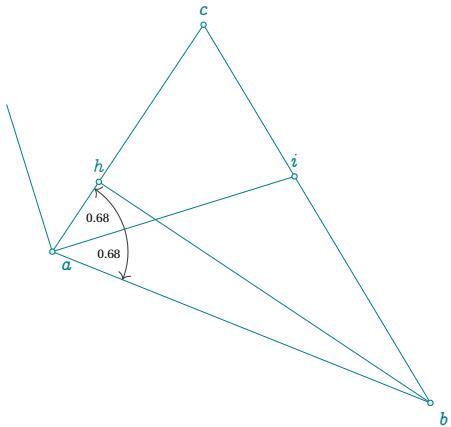
`isortho(z.a,z.b,z.c)` gives true if the line (ab) is orthogonal to the line (ac) .

20.11 Bisector and altitude

These functions are useful if you don't need to create a useful triangle object for the rest of your code.

```
\begin{tkzelements}
z.a = point: new (0, 0)
z.b = point: new (5, -2)
z.c = point: new (2, 3)
z.i = bisector (z.a,z.c,z.b).pb
z.h = altitude (z.b,z.a,z.c).pb
angic = tkzround ( get_angle (z.a,z.i,z.c),2)
angci = tkzround ( get_angle (z.a,z.b,z.i),2)
z.e = bisector_ext (z.a,z.b,z.c).pb
\end{tkzelements}
```

```
\begin{tikzpicture}
\tkzGetNodes
\tkzDrawPolygon(a,b,c)
\tkzDrawSegments(a,i b,h a,e)
\tkzDrawPoints(a,b,c,i,h)
\tkzLabelPoints(a,b)
\tkzLabelPoints[above](c,i,h)
\tkzMarkAngle[>](i,a,c)
\tkzLabelAngle[font=\tiny, pos=.75](i,a,c){\tkzUseLua{angci}}
\tkzMarkAngle[<=](b,a,i)
\tkzLabelAngle[font=\tiny, pos=.75](b,a,i){\tkzUseLua{angic}}
\end{tikzpicture}
```



20.12 Other functions

Not documented because still in beta version: parabola, Cramer22, Cramer33.

20.12.1 Function solve_quadratic

This function solves the equation $ax^2 + bx + c = 0$ with real or complex numbers.

```
\begin{tkzelements}
tex.sprint('Solve : $x^2+1=0$ The solution set is ')
r1,r2 = solve_quadratic(1,0,1)
tex.print('\\{..tostring(r1)..' , '..tostring(r2)..\\}')
tex.print('\\\\')
tex.sprint('Solve : $x^2+2x-3=0$ The solution set is ')
r1,r2 = solve_quadratic(1,2,-3)
tex.print('\\{..tostring(r1)..' , '..tostring(r2)..\\}')
tex.print('\\\\')
a = point (0,1)
b = point (1,1)
c = point (-1,1)
tex.sprint('Solve : $ix^2+(1+i)x+(-1+i)=0$ The solution set is ')
r1,r2 = solve_quadratic(a,b,c)
tex.print('\\{..tostring(r1)..' , '..tostring(r2)..\\}')
\end{tkzelements}
Solve:  $x^2+1=0$  The solution set is {i, -i}
Solve:  $x^2+2x-3=0$  The solution set is {1.0, -3.0}
Solve:  $ix^2+(1+i)x+(-1+i)=0$  The solution set is {0.13-0.68i, -1.13+1.68i}
```

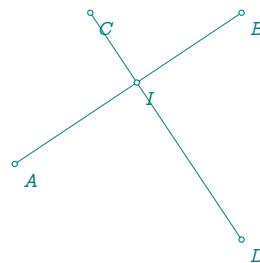
21 Intersections

It's an essential tool. For the moment, the classes concerned are lines, circles and ellipses, with the following combinations: line-line; line-circle; circle-circle and line-ellipse. The argument is a pair of objects, in any order. Results consist of one or two values, either points, boolean **false** or underscore _.

21.1 Line-line

The result is of the form: point or false.

```
\begin{tkzelements}
z.A = point : new (1,-1)
z.B = point : new (4,1)
z.C = point : new (2,1)
z.D = point : new (4,-2)
z.I = point : new (Q,Q)
L.AB = line : new (z.A,z.B)
L.CD = line : new (z.C,z.D)
x = intersection (L.AB,L.CD)
if x == false then
tex.print('error')
else
z.I = x
end
\end{tkzelements}
```



```
\begin{tikzpicture}
\tkzGetNodes
\tkzDrawSegments(A,B C,D)
\tkzDrawPoints(A,B,C,D,I)
\tkzLabelPoints(A,B,C,D,I)
\end{tikzpicture}
```

Other examples: 10.2.1, 10.2.2, 23.3

21.2 Line-circle

The result is of the form : point ,point or false ,false. If the line is tangent to the circle, then the two points are identical. You can ignore one of the points by using the underscore: _,point or point ,_. When the intersection yields two solutions, the order of the points is determined by the argument of (z.p - z.c) with c center of the circle and p point of intersection. The first solution corresponds to the smallest argument (arguments are between 0 and 2π).

```
\begin{tkzelements}
```

```

z.A    = point : new (1,-1)
z.B    = point : new (1,2)
L.AB   = line : new (z.A,z.B)
z.O    = point : new (2,1)
z.D    = point : new (3,1)
z.E    = point : new (3,2)
L.AE   = line : new (z.A,z.E)
C.OD   = circle : new (z.O,z.D)
z.I,_ = intersection (L.AB,C.OD)
_,z.K = intersection (C.OD,L.AE)

```

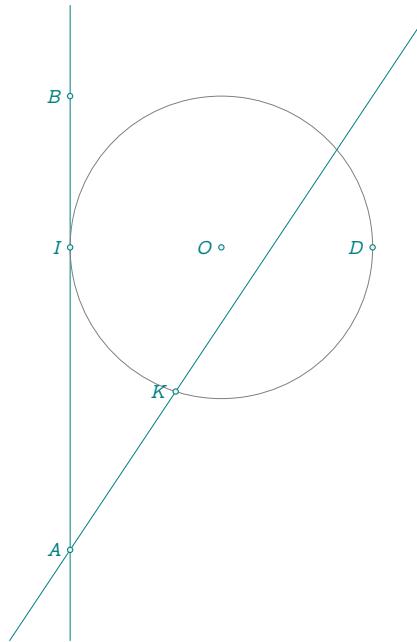
```
\end{tkzelements}
```

```

\begin{tikzpicture}
\tkzGetNodes
\tkzDrawLines(A,B A,E)
\tkzDrawCircle(O,D)
\tkzDrawPoints(A,B,O,D,I,K)
\tkzLabelPoints[left](A,B,O,D,I,K)

```

Other examples: 10.2.1

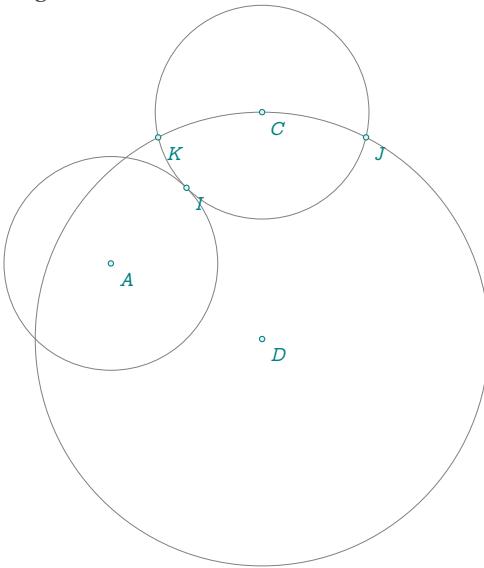


21.3 Circle-circle

The result is of the form : point , point or false , false. If the circles are tangent, then the two points are identical. You can ignore one of the points by using the underscore: _ , point or point , _. As for the intersection of a line and a circle, consider the argument of z.p-z.c with c center of the first circle and p point of intersection. The first solution corresponds to the smallest argument (arguments are between 0 and 2π).

```
\begin{tkzelements}
z.A      = point : new (1,1)
z.B      = point : new (2,2)
z.C      = point : new (3,3)
z.D      = point : new (3,0)
C.AB     = circle : new (z.A,z.B)
C.CB     = circle : new (z.C,z.B)
z.I,_   = intersection (C.AB,C.CB)
C.DC     = circle : new (z.D,z.C)
z.J,z.K = intersection (C.DC,C.CB)
\end{tkzelements}
\begin{tikzpicture}
\tkzGetNodes
\tkzDrawCircles(A,B C,B D,C)
\tkzDrawPoints(A,I,C,D,J,K)
\tkzLabelPoints(A,I,C,D,J,K)
\end{tikzpicture}
```

Other examples: 10.2.1, 3.3

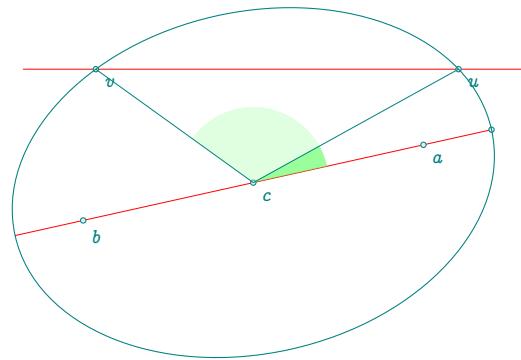


21.4 Line-ellipse

The following example is complex, but it shows the possibilities of Lua. The designation of intersection points is a little more complicated than the previous one, as the argument characterizing the major axis must be taken into account. The principle is the same, but this argument must be subtracted. In concrete terms, you need to consider the slopes of the lines formed by the center of the ellipse and the points of intersection, and the slope of the major axis.

```
\begin{tkzelements}
scale    = .5
z.a      = point: new (5 , 2)
z.b      = point: new (-4 , 0)
z.m      = point: new (2 , 4)
z.n      = point: new (4 , 4)
L.ab     = line : new (z.a,z.b)
L.mn     = line : new (z.m,z.n)
z.c      = L.ab. mid
z.e      = L.ab: point (-.2)
E        = ellipse: foci (z.a,z.b,z.e)
z.u,z.v = intersection (E,L.mn)
-- transfer to tex
a        = E.Rx
b        = E.Ry
ang      = math.deg(E.slope)
\end{tkzelements}
\begin{tikzpicture}
\tkzGetNodes
\tkzDrawLines[red](a,b u,v) % p,s p,t
\tkzDrawPoints(a,b,c,e,u,v) %
\tkzLabelPoints(a,b,c,u,v)
\tkzDrawEllipse[teal](c,\tkzUseLua{a},\tkzUseLua{b},\tkzUseLua{ang})
\tkzDrawSegments(c,u c,v)
\tkzFillAngles[green!30!,opacity=.4](e,c,v)
\tkzFillAngles[green!80!,opacity=.4](e,c,u)
\end{tikzpicture}
```

Other examples: 12.2.2, 23.32



22 In-depth study

22.1 The tables

22.1.1 General tables

Tables are the only data structure "container" integrated in Lua. They are associative arrays which associates a key (reference or index) with a value in the form of a field (set) of key/value pairs. Moreover, tables have no fixed size and can grow based on our need dynamically.

Tables are created using table constructors, the simplest of which is the use of braces, e.g. {}. This defines an empty table.

```
F = {"banana", "apple", "cherry"}
```

`print(F[2]) -> pomme`
qui peut être également défini par

```
FR = {[1] = "banana", [3] = "cherry", [2] = "apple"}
```

`print(FR[3]) -> cherry`
`FR[4] = "orange"`

```
print(#FR)
-- I for Index
for I,V in ipairs(FR) do
    print(I,V)
end
```

1 banana
2 apple
3 cherry
4 orange

```
C = {[["banana"]] = "yellow" , ["]apple"] = "green" , ["]cherry"] = "red" }
C.orange = "orange"
```

```
for K,V in pairs (C) do
    print(K,V)
end
```

`banana = yellow` `cherry = red` `orange = orange` `apple = green`

Another useful feature is the ability to create a table to store an unknown number of function parameters, for example:

```
function ReturnTable (...)
    return table.pack (...)
end
```

```

function ParamToTable (...)
    mytab = ReturnTable(...)
    for i=1,mytab.n do
        print(mytab[i])
    end
end
ParamToTable("cherry","apple","orange")

```

Using tables with table[key] syntax:

C["banana"] and F[1]

But with string constants as keys we have the sugar syntax: C.banana but this syntax does not accept numbers.
It's possible to erase a key/value pair from a table, with :

```
C.banana = nil
```

22.1.2 Table z

This is the most important table in the package. It stores all points and enables them to be transferred to TikZ.
It is defined with `z = {}`, then each time we write

```
z.name = point : new (a , b)
```

a point object is stored in the table. The key is name, the value is an object. We have seen that `z.name.re = a` and that `z.name.im = b`.

However, the elements of this table have essential properties.

For example, if you wish to display an element, then `tex.print(tostring(z.name)) = a+ib` the `tostring` operation displays the affix corresponding to the point.

In addition, we'll see that it's possible to perform operations with the elements of the z table.

22.2 Transfers

We've seen (sous-section 6.1.1) that the macro transfers point coordinates to TikZ. Let's take a closer look at this macro:

```

\def\tkzGetNodes{\directlua{%
for K,V in pairs(z) do
    local K,n,sd,ft
    n = string.len(KS)
    if n >1 then
        _,_,ft, sd = string.find( K , "(.+)(.)" )
        if sd == "p" then    K=ft.."" end
    end
    tex.print("\coordinate (...K...) at (...V.re...,...V.im...);\\\"")
end}
}

```

It consists mainly of a loop. The variables used are K (for keys) and V (for Values). To take pairs (key/value) from the z table, use the pairs function. K becomes the name of a node whose coordinates are V.re and V.im. Meanwhile, we search for keys with more than one symbol ending in p, in order to associate them with the symbol "" valid in TikZ.

22.3 Complex numbers library and point

Unless you want to create your own functions, you won't need to know and use complex numbers. However, in some cases it may be useful to implement some of their properties.

`z.A = point : new (1,2)` and `z.B = point : new (1,-1)` define two affixes which are $z_A = 1 + 2i$ and $z_B = 1 - i$. Note the difference in notations `z.A` and `z_A` for two distinct entities: a Lua object and an affix.

If you want to use only complex numbers then you must choose the following syntax `:za = point (1,2)`. The difference between `z.A = point : new (1,2)` and `za = point (1,2)` is that the first function takes into account the scale. If `scale = 2` then $z_A = 2 + 4i$. In addition, the object referenced by A is stored in table z and not za.

The notation may come as a surprise, as I used the term "point". The aim here was not to create a complete library on complex numbers, but to be able to use their main properties in relation to points. I didn't want to have two different levels, and since a unique connection can be established between the points of the plane and the complexes, I decided not to mention the complex numbers! But they are there.

Table 29: Point or complex metamethods.

Metamethods	Application
<code>__add(z1,z2)</code>	<code>z.a + z.b</code> affix
<code>__sub(z1,z2)</code>	<code>z.a - z.b</code> affix
<code>__unm(z)</code>	<code>- z.a</code> affix
<code>__mul(z1,z2)</code>	<code>z.a * z.b</code> affix
<code>__concat(z1,z2)</code>	<code>z.a .. z.b</code> dot product = real number ^a
<code>__pow(z1,z2)</code>	<code>z.a ^ z.b</code> determinant = real number
<code>__div(z1,z2)</code>	<code>z.a / z.b</code> affix
<code>__tostring(z)</code>	<code>tex.print(tostring(z))</code> displays the affix
<code>__tonumber(z)</code>	<code>tonumber(z)</code> affix or nil
<code>__eq(z1,z2)</code>	<code>eq (z.a,z.b)</code> boolean

^a If O is the origin of the complex plan, then we get the dot product of the vectors \overrightarrow{Oa} and \overrightarrow{Ob}

Table 30: Point (complex) class methods.

Methods	Application
<code>conj(z)</code>	<code>z.a : conj()</code> affix (conjugate)
<code>mod(z)</code>	<code>z.a : mod()</code> real number = modulus <code>z.a</code>
<code>abs (z)</code>	<code>z.a : abs()</code> real number = modulus
<code>norm (z)</code>	<code>z.a : norm()</code> norm (real number)
<code>arg (z)</code>	<code>z.a : arg()</code> real number = argument of <code>z.a</code> (in rad)
<code>get(z)</code>	<code>z.a : get()</code> re and im (two real numbers)
<code>sqrt(z)</code>	<code>z.a : sqrt()</code> affix

The class is provided with two specific metamethods.

- Since concatenation makes little sense here, the operation associated with `..` is the scalar or dot product.
If $z1 = a+ib$ and $z2 = c+id$ then

$$z1..z2 = (a+ib) .. (c+id) = (a+ib)(c-id) = ac+bd + i(bc-ad)$$
There's also a mathematical function, `dot_product`, which takes three arguments. See example 20.9
- With the same idea, the operation associated with `^` is the determinant i.e.

$$z1 ^ z2 = (a+ib) ^ (c+id) = ad - bc$$
From $(a-ib)(c+id) = ac+bd + i(ad - bc)$ we take the imaginary part.

22.3.1 Example of complex use

Let `za = math.cos(a) + i math.sin(a)`. This is obtained from the library by writing

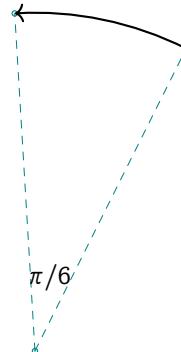
```
za = point(math.cos(a),math.sin(a)).
```

Then $z \cdot B = z \cdot A * za$ describes a rotation of point A by an angle a .

```

\begin{tkzelements}
z.O = point : new (0,0)
z.A = point : new (1,2)
a = math.pi/6
za = point(math.cos(a),math.sin(a))
z.B = z.A * za
\end{tkzelements}
\begin{tikzpicture}
\tkzGetNodes
\tkzDrawPoints(O,A,B)
\tkzDrawArc[->,delta=0](O,A)(B)
\tkzDrawSegments[dashed](O,A,O,B)
\tkzLabelAngle(A,O,B){$\pi/6$}
\end{tikzpicture}

```

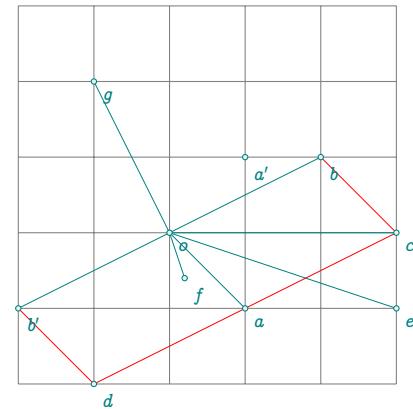


22.3.2 Point operations (complex)

```

\begin{tkzelements}
z.o = point: new(0,0)
z.a = point: new(1,-1)
z.b = point: new(2,1)
z.bp = -z.b
z.c = z.a + z.b
z.d = z.a - z.b
z.e = z.a * z.b
z.f = z.a / z.b
z.ap = point.conj (z.a)
-- = z.a : conj ()
z.g = z.b* point(math.cos(math.pi/2)
                  math.sin(math.pi/2))
\end{tkzelements}

```



```

\hspace*{\fill}
\begin{tikzpicture}
\tkzGetNodes
\tkzInit[xmin=-2,xmax=3,ymin=-2,ymax=3]
\tkzGrid
\tkzDrawSegments(o,a o,b o,c o,e o,b' o,f o,g)
\tkzDrawSegments[red](a,c b,c b',d a,d)
\tkzDrawPoints(a,...,g,o,a',b')
\tkzLabelPoints(o,a,b,c,d,e,f,g,a',b')
\end{tikzpicture}

```

22.4 Barycenter

Here's the definition of the barycenter, which is used some forty times in the package.

`table.pack` builds a table from a list.

`tp.n` gives the number of pairs.

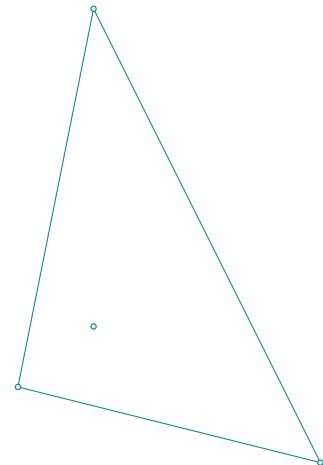
`tp[i][1]` is an affix and `tp[i][2]` the associated weight (real value). See the example.

```
function barycenter_ (...)
local tp = table.pack(...)
local i
local sum = 0
local weight=0
for i=1,tp.n do
    sum = sum + tp[i][1]*tp[i][2]
    weight = weight + tp[i][2]
end
return sum/weight
end
```

22.4.1 Using the barycentre

```
\begin{tkzelements}
z.A = point: new (1,0)
z.B = point: new (5,-1)
z.C = point: new (2,5)
z.G = barycenter ({z.A,3},{z.B,1},{z.C,1})
\end{tkzelements}

\begin{tikzpicture}
\tkzGetNodes
\tkzDrawPolygon(A,B,C)
\tkzDrawPoints(A,B,C,G)
\end{tikzpicture}
```



22.4.2 Incenter of a triangle

The calculation of the weights `ka`, `kb` and `kc` is precise, and the result obtained with the barycenter is excellent. Note the presence of the underscore `_` for certain functions. These functions are internal (developer). Each external (user) function is associated with its internal counterpart.

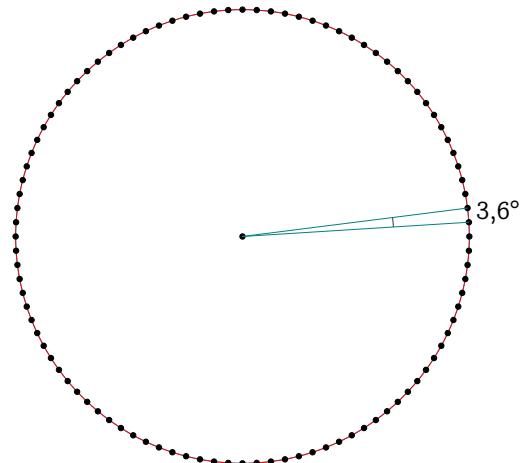
Here's how to determine the center of the inscribed circle of a triangle:

```
function in_center_ ( a,b,c )
    local ka = point.abs (b-c)
    local kc = point.abs (b-a)
    local kb = point.abs (c-a)
    return     barycenter_ ( {a,ka} , {b,kb} , {c,kc} )
```

22.5 Loop and table notation

The problem encountered in this example stems from the notation of the point names. Since it's not possible to write in simplified form, we have to resort to `table[key]` notation.

```
\begin{tkzelements}
local r = 3
z.0      = point : new (0,0)
max      = 100
for i    = 1,max
do
  z["A_"..i] = point : polar(r,2*i*math.pi/max)
end
a = math.deg(get_angle (z.0,z.A_1,z.A_2))
\end{tkzelements}
```



22.6 In_out method

This function can be used for the following objects

- line
- circle
- triangle
- ellipse

The disk object doesn't exist, so with in_out_disk it's possible to determine whether a point is in a disk.

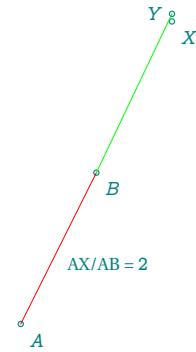
22.6.1 In_out for a line

```
function line: in_out (pt)
local sc,epsilon
epsilon = 10^(-12)
sc = math.abs ((pt-self.pa)^(pt-self.pb))
if sc <= epsilon
  then
    return true
  else
    return false
  end
end
```

The `ifthen` package is required for the code below.

```
\begin{tkzelements}
z.A      = point: new (0,0)
z.B      = point: new (1,2)
z.X      = point: new (2,4.000)
z.Y      = point: new (2,4.1)
L.AB = line : new (z.A,z.B)
if L.AB : in_out (z.X)
then
  inline = true  k = (z.X-z.A)/(z.B-z.A)
else
  inline = false
end
inline_bis = L.AB : in_out (z.Y)
\end{tkzelements}
```

```
\begin{tikzpicture}
\tkzGetNodes
\tkzDrawPoints(A,B,X,Y)
\tkzLabelPoints(A,B,X)
\tkzLabelPoints[left](Y)
\ifthenelse{\equal{\tkzUseLua{inline}}{true}}{
  \tkzDrawSegment[red](A,B)
  \tkzLabelSegment(A,B){AX/AB = $\tkzUseLua{k}$}%
  \tkzDrawSegment[blue](A,B)}
\ifthenelse{\equal{\tkzUseLua{inline_bis}}{false}}{%
  \tkzDrawSegment[green](B,Y)}%
\end{tikzpicture}
```



22.7 Determinant and dot product

22.7.1 Determinant

We've just seen how to use `^` to obtain the determinant associated with two vectors.

`in_out` is simply a copy of `islinear`.

Here's the definition and transformation of the power of a complex number.

```
-- determinant is '^' ad - bc
function point._pow(z1,z2)
  local z
  z = point.conj(z1) * z2 -- (a-ib) (c+id) = ac+bd + i(ad - bc)
  return z.im
end
```

22.7.2 Dot product

Here's the definition of the dot product between two affixes and the concatenation transformation.

```
-- dot product is '..'           result ac + bd
function point._concat(z1,z2)
  local z
  z = z1 * point.conj(z2)        -- (a+ib) (c-id) = ac+bd + i(bc-ad)
  return z.re
end
```

22.7.3 Dot product: orthogonality test

Here's a function `isortho` to test orthogonality between two vectors.

```
function isortho (z1,z2,z3)
    local epsilon
    local dp
    epsilon = 10^(-8)
    dp = (z2-z1) .. (z3-z1)
    if math.abs(dp) < epsilon
        then
            return true
        else
            return false
        end
    end
```

22.7.4 Dot product: projection

The projection of a point onto a straight line is a fundamental function, and its definition is as follows:

```
function projection_ ( pa,pb,pt )
    local v
    local z
    if aligned ( pa,pb,pt ) then
        return pt
    else
        v = pb - pa
        z = ((pt - pa)..v)/(point.norm(v)) -- .. dot product
        return pa + z * v
    end
end
```

The function `aligned` is equivalent to `islinear` but does not use a determinant. It will be replaced in a future version.

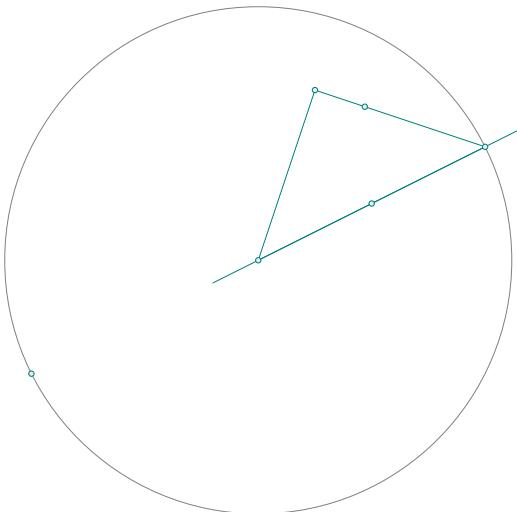
22.8 Point method

The point method is a method for many objects:

- line ,
- circle,
- ellipse,
- triangle.

You obtain a point on the object by entering a real number between 0 and 1.

```
\begin{tkzelements}
z.A = point : new ( 0 , 0 )
z.B = point : new ( 4 , 2 )
z.C = point : new ( 1 , 3 )
L.AB = line : new (z.A,z.B)
C.AB = circle : new (z.A,z.B)
T.ABC = triangle : new (z.A,z.B,z.C)
z.I = L.AB : point (0.5)
z.J = C.AB : point (0.5)
z.K = T.ABC : point (0.5)
\end{tkzelements}
\begin{tikzpicture}
\tkzGetNodes
\tkzDrawLine(A,B)
\tkzDrawCircle(A,B)
\tkzDrawPolygon(A,B,C)
\tkzDrawPoints(A,B,C,I,J,K)
\end{tikzpicture}
```



22.9 Behind the objects

Before introducing objects, I only used functions whose parameters were points (complexes).

For example, $z.m = \text{midpoint_}(z.a, z.b)$ defines the midpoint of points a and b . With objects, first define the line/segment $L.ab$ and then obtain the middle with $z.m = L.ab.mid$.

I've kept the functions (which I'll call "primary") whose only arguments are points. They are distinguished from the others by a terminal underscore. In fact, all (almost) object-related functions depend on a primary function. We've just seen the case of the midpoint of a point, so let's look at two other cases:

- Rotation around a point. c is the center of rotation, a the angle and pt the point to be affected. For example: $z.Mp = \text{rotation_}(z.A, \text{math.pi}/6, z.M)$

```
function rotation_(c,a,pt)
local z=point( math.cos(a) , math.sin(a) )
return z*(pt-c)+c
end
```

With objects, this gives $z.Mp = z.A : \text{rotation} (\text{math.pi}/6, z.M)$

- The intersection of a line and a circle is obtained using $\text{intersection_lc_}(z.A, z.B, z.O, z.T)$. using the straight line (A, B) and the circle $C(O, T)$.

This will result in the objects: $\text{intersection} (L.AB, C.OT)$

The difference is that programming is more direct with primary functions and a little more efficient, but loses visibility.

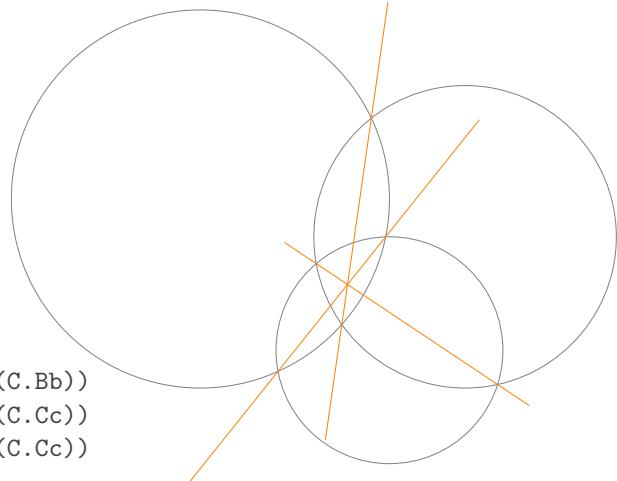
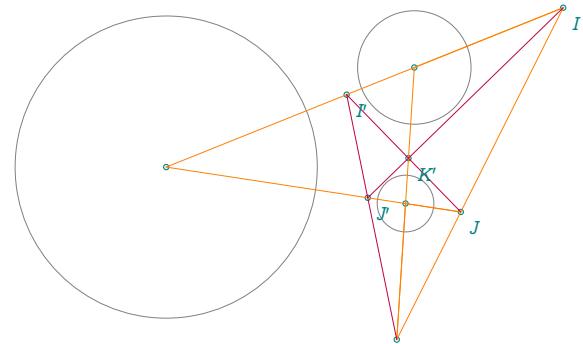
23 Examples

23.1 D'Alembert 1

```
\begin{tkzelements}
z.A = point : new (0,0)
z.a = point : new (4,0)
z.B = point : new (7,-1)
z.b = point : new (5.5,-1)
z.C = point : new (5,-4)
z.c = point : new (4.25,-4)
C.Aa = circle : new (z.A,z.a)
C.Bb = circle : new (z.B,z.b)
C.Cc = circle : new (z.C,z.c)
z.I = C.Aa : external_similitude (C.Bb)
z.J = C.Aa : external_similitude (C.Cc)
z.K = C.Cc : external_similitude (C.Bb)
z.Ip = C.Aa : internal_similitude (C.Bb)
z.Jp = C.Aa : internal_similitude (C.Cc)
z.Kp = C.Cc : internal_similitude (C.Bb)
\end{tkzelements}
\begin{tikzpicture}[rotate=-60]
\tkzGetNodes
\tkzDrawCircles(A,a B,b C,c)
\tkzDrawPoints(A,B,C,I,J,K,I',J',K')
\tkzDrawSegments[new](I,K A,I A,J B,I B,K C,J C,K)
\tkzDrawSegments[purple](I,J' I',J I',K)
\tkzLabelPoints(I,J,K,I',J',K')
\end{tikzpicture}
```

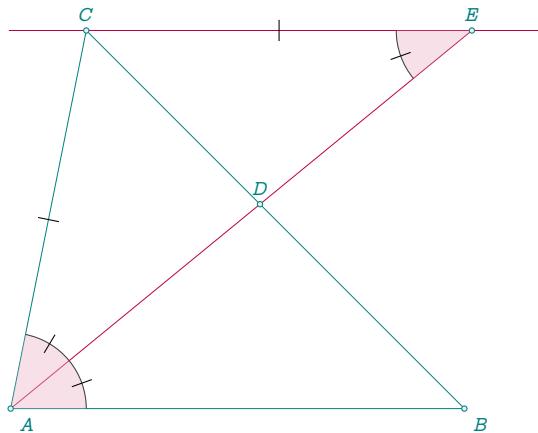
23.2 D'Alembert 2

```
\begin{tkzelements}
scale = .75
z.A = point : new (0,0)
z.a = point : new (5,0)
z.B = point : new (7,-1)
z.b = point : new (3,-1)
z.C = point : new (5,-4)
z.c = point : new (2,-4)
C.Aa = circle : new (z.A,z.a)
C.Bb = circle : new (z.B,z.b)
C.Cc = circle : new (z.C,z.c)
z.i,z.j = get_points (C.Aa : radical_axis (C.Bb))
z.k,z.l = get_points (C.Aa : radical_axis (C.Cc))
z.m,z.n = get_points (C.Bb : radical_axis (C.Cc))
\end{tkzelements}
\begin{tikzpicture}
\tkzGetNodes
\tkzDrawCircles(A,a B,b C,c)
\tkzDrawLines[new](i,j k,l m,n)
\end{tikzpicture}
```



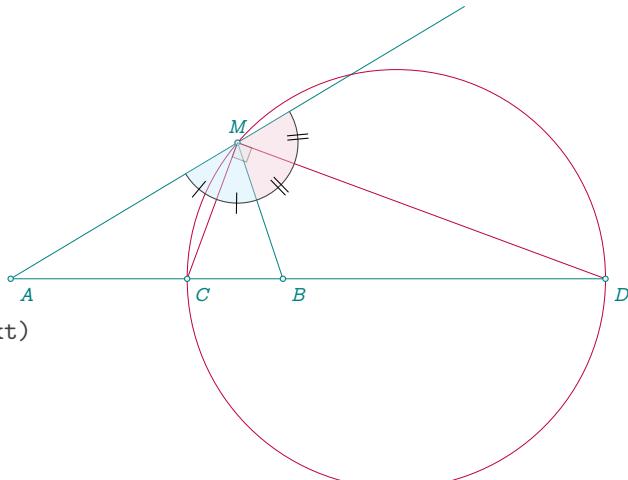
23.3 Alternate

```
\begin{tkzelements}
z.A = point: new (0 , 0)
z.B = point: new (6 , 0)
z.C = point: new (1 , 5)
T = triangle: new (z.A,z.B,z.C)
z.I = T.incenter
L.AI = line: new (z.A,z.I)
z.D = intersection (L.AI,T.bc)
L.LLC = T.ab: ll_from (z.C)
z.E = intersection (L.AI,L.LLC)
\end{tkzelements}
\begin{tikzpicture}
\tkzGetNodes
\tkzDrawPolygon(A,B,C)
\tkzDrawLine[purple](C,E)
\tkzDrawSegment[purple](A,E)
\tkzFillAngles[purple!30,opacity=.4](B,A,C C,E,D)
\tkzMarkAngles[mark=|](B,A,D D,A,C C,E,D)
\tkzDrawPoints(A,...,E)
\tkzLabelPoints(A,B)
\tkzLabelPoints[above](C,D,E)
\tkzMarkSegments(A,C C,E)
\end{tikzpicture}
```



23.4 Apollonius circle

```
\begin{tkzelements}
scale=.75
z.A      = point: new (0 , 0)
z.B      = point: new (6 , 0)
z.M      = point: new (5 , 3)
T.MAB    = triangle : new (z.M,z.A,z.B)
L.bis   = T.MAB : bisector ()
z.C      = L.bis.pb
L.bisext = T.MAB : bisector_ext ()
z.D      = intersection (T.MAB.bc, L.bisext)
L.CD    = line: new (z.C,z.D)
z.O      = L.CD.mid
L.AM    = T.MAB.ab
z.E      = z.M : symmetry (z.A)
\end{tkzelements}
\begin{tikzpicture}
\tkzGetNodes
\tkzDrawSegment[add=0 and 1](A,M)
\tkzDrawSegments[purple](M,C M,D)
\tkzDrawCircle[purple](O,C)
\tkzDrawSegments(A,B B,M D,B)
\tkzDrawPoints(A,B,M,C,D)
\tkzLabelPoints[below right](A,B,C,D)
\tkzLabelPoints[above](M)
\tkzFillAngles[opacity=.4,cyan!20](A,M,B)
\end{tikzpicture}
```



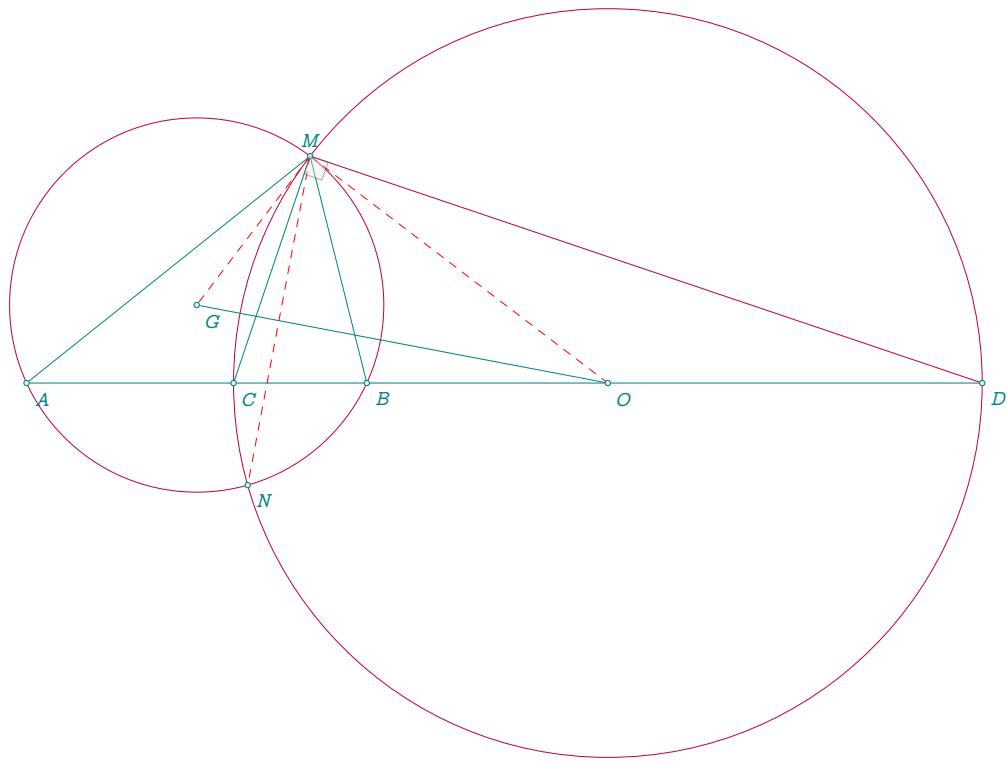
```
\tkzFillAngles[opacity=.4,purple!20](B,M,E)
\tkzMarkRightAngle[opacity=.4,fill=gray!20](C,M,D)
\tkzMarkAngles[mark=|](A,M,C C,M,B)
\tkzMarkAngles[mark=||](B,M,D D,M,E)
\end{tikzpicture}
```

Remark : The circle can be obtained with:

```
C.AB = T.MAB.bc : apollonius (length(z.M,z.A)/length(z.M,z.B))
```

23.5 Apollonius and circle circumscribed

```
\begin{tkzelements}
scale =.75
z.A = point: new (0 , 0)
z.B = point: new (6 , 0)
z.M = point: new (5 , 4)
T.AMB = triangle: new (z.A,z.M,z.B)
L.AB = T.AMB.ca
z.I = T.AMB.incenter
L.MI = line: new (z.M,z.I)
z.C = intersection (L.AB , L.MI)
L.MJ = L.MI: ortho_from (z.M)
z.D = intersection (L.AB , L.MJ)
L.CD = line: new (z.C,z.D)
z.O = L.CD.mid
z.G = T.AMB.circumcenter
C.GA = circle: new (z.G,z.A)
C.OC = circle: new (z.O,z.C)
_,z.N = intersection (C.GA , C.OC)
\end{tkzelements}
\begin{tikzpicture}
\tkzGetNodes
\tkzDrawPolygon(A,B,M)
\tkzDrawCircles[purple](O,C G,A)
\tkzDrawSegments[purple](M,D)
\tkzDrawSegments(D,B O,G M,C)
\tkzDrawSegments[red,dashed](M,N M,O M,G)
\tkzDrawPoints(A,B,M,C,D,N,O,G)
\tkzLabelPoints[below right](A,B,C,D,N,O,G)
\tkzLabelPoints[above](M)
\tkzMarkRightAngle[opacity=.4,fill=gray!20](C,M,D)
\end{tikzpicture}
```



23.6 Apollonius circles in a triangle

```
\begin{tkzelements}
z.A = point: new (0 , 0)
z.B = point: new (6 , 0)
z.C = point: new (4.5 , 1)
T.ABC = triangle: new (z.A,z.B,z.C)
z.I = T.ABC.incenter
z.O = T.ABC.circumcenter
L.CI = line: new (z.C,z.I)
z.Cp = intersection (T.ABC.ab , L.CI)
z.x = L.CI.north_pa
L.Cx = line: new (z.C,z.x)
z.R = intersection (L.Cx,T.ABC.ab)
L.CpR = line: new (z.Cp,z.R)
z.01 = L.CpR.mid
L.AI = line: new (z.A,z.I)
z.Ap = intersection (T.ABC.bc , L.AI)
z.y = L.AI.north_pa
L.Ay = line: new (z.A,z.y)
z.S = intersection (L.Ay,T.ABC.bc)
L.ApS = line: new (z.Ap,z.S)
z.02 = L.ApS.mid
L.BI = line: new (z.B,z.I)
z.Bp = intersection (T.ABC.ca , L.BI)
z.z = L.BI.north_pa
L.Bz = line: new (z.B,z.z)
z.T = intersection (L.Bz,T.ABC.ca)
L.Bpt = line: new (z.Bp,z.T)
z.03 = L.Bpt.mid

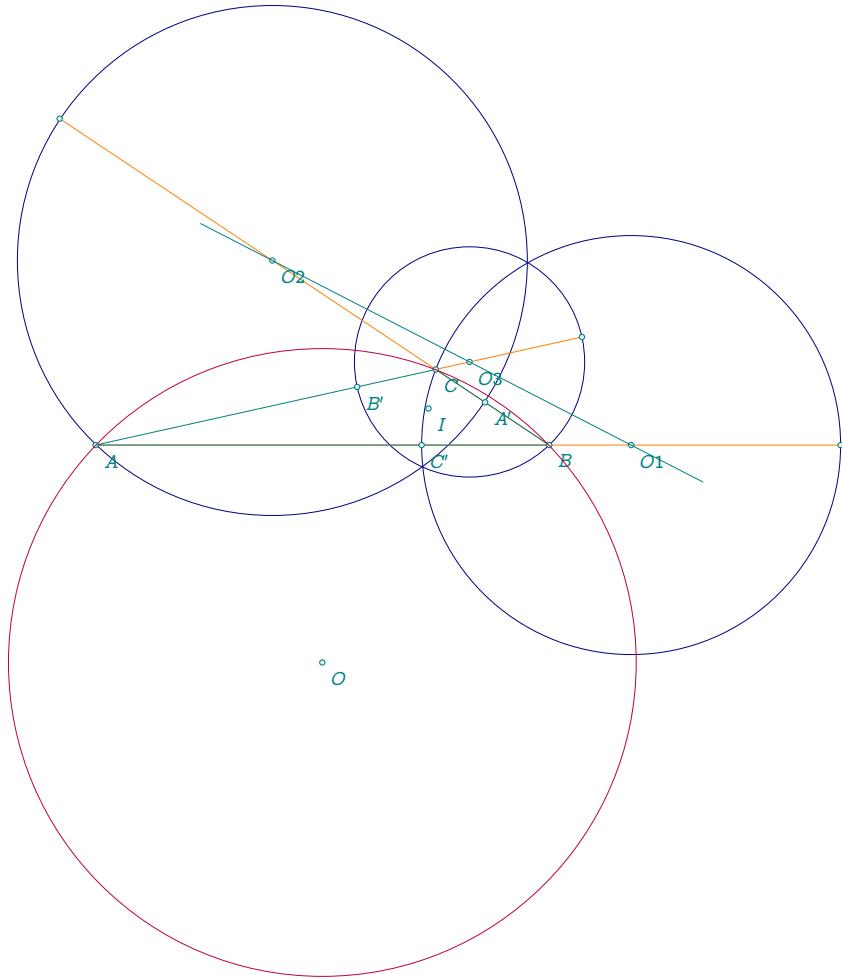
```

```

\end{tkzelements}

\begin{tikzpicture}
\tkzGetNodes
\tkzDrawCircles[blue!50!black](O1,C' O2,A' O3,B')
\tkzDrawSegments[new](B,S C,T A,R)
\tkzDrawPolygon(A,B,C)
\tkzDrawPoints(A,B,C,A',B',C',O,I,R,S,T,O1,O2,O3)
\tkzLabelPoints(A,B,C,A',B',C',O,I)
\tkzLabelPoints(O1,O2,O3)
\tkzDrawCircle[purple](O,A)
\tkzDrawLine(O1,O2)
\end{tikzpicture}

```



Same result using the function T.ABC.ab : apollonius (k)

```

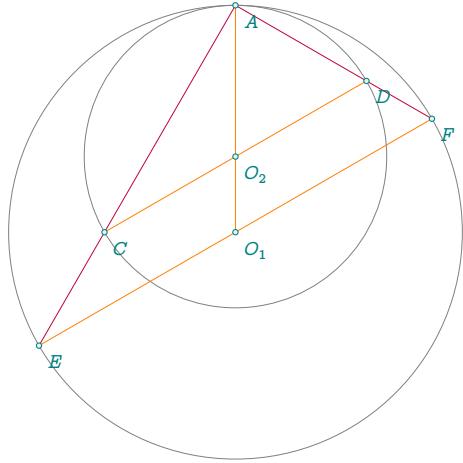
\begin{tkzelements}
scale      = .75
z.A        = point: new (Q , Q)
z.B        = point: new (6 , Q)
z.C        = point: new (4.5 , 1)
T.ABC      = triangle : new (z.A,z.B,z.C)
z.O        = T.ABC.circumcenter
C.AB       = T.ABC.ab : apollonius (length(z.C,z.A)/length(z.C,z.B))
z.w1,z.t1 = get_points ( C.AB )

```

```
C.AC      = T.ABC.ca : apollonius (length(z.B,z.C)/length(z.B,z.A))
z.w2,z.t2 = get_points ( C.AC )
C.BC      = T.ABC.bc : apollonius (length(z.A,z.B)/length(z.A,z.C))
z.w3,z.t3 = get_points ( C.BC )
\end{tkzelements}
```

23.7 Archimedes

```
\begin{tkzelements}
z.O_1    = point: new (0, 0)
z.O_2    = point: new (0, 1)
z.A      = point: new (0, 3)
z.F      = point: polar (3, math.pi/6)
L        = line: new (z.F,z.O_1)
C        = circle: new (z.O_1,z.A)
z.E      = intersection (L,C)
T        = triangle: new (z.F,z.E,z.O_2)
z.x      = T: parallelogram ()
L        = line: new (z.x,z.O_2)
C        = circle: new (z.O_2,z.A)
z.C,z.D = intersection (L ,C)
\end{tkzelements}
\begin{tikzpicture}
\tkzGetNodes
\tkzDrawCircles(O_1,A O_2,A)
\tkzDrawSegments[new](O_1,A E,F C,D)
\tkzDrawSegments[purple](A,E A,F)
\tkzDrawPoints(A,O_1,O_2,E,F,C,D)
\tkzLabelPoints(A,O_1,O_2,E,F,C,D)
\end{tikzpicture}
```



23.8 Bankoff circle

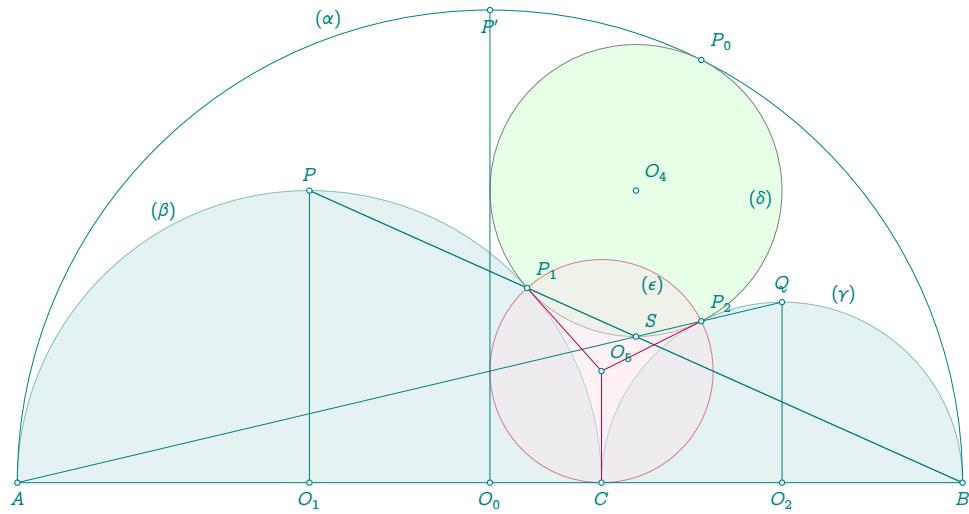
```
\begin{tkzelements}
z.A      = point: new (0 , 0)
z.B      = point: new (10 , 0)
L.AB    = line : new (z.A,z.B)
z.C      = L.AB: gold_ratio ()
L.AC    = line : new (z.A,z.C)
L.CB    = line : new (z.C,z.B)
z.O_0    = L.AB.mid
z.O_1    = L.AC.mid
z.O_2    = L.CB.mid
C.OQB   = circle : new (z.O_0,z.B)
C.O1C   = circle : new (z.O_1,z.C)
C.O2C   = circle : new (z.O_2,z.B)
z.Pp    = C.OQB : midarc (z.B,z.A)
z.P    = C.O1C : midarc (z.C,z.A)
z.Q    = C.O2C : midarc (z.B,z.C)
L.0102  = line : new (z.O_1,z.O_2)
L.0001  = line : new (z.O_0,z.O_1)
L.0002  = line : new (z.O_0,z.O_2)
z.M_0   = L.0102 : harmonic_ext (z.C)
\end{tkzelements}
```

```

z.M_1      = L.OQO1 : harmonic_int (z.A)
z.M_2      = L.OQO2 : harmonic_int (z.B)
L.BP       = line : new (z.B,z.P)
L.AQ       = line : new (z.A,z.Q)
z.S        = intersection (L.BP,L.AQ)
L.PpOQ    = line : new (z.Pp,z.O_Q)
L.PC       = line : new (z.P,z.C)
z.Ap       = intersection (L.PpOQ,L.PC)
L.CS       = line : new (z.C,z.S)
C.M1A     = circle : new (z.M_1,z.A)
C.M2B     = circle : new (z.M_2,z.B)
z.P_Q     = intersection (L.CS,C.OQB)
z.P_1     = intersection (C.M2B,C.O1C)
z.P_2     = intersection (C.M1A,C.O2C)
T.PQP1P2 = triangle : new (z.P_Q,z.P_1,z.P_2)
z.O_4     = T.PQP1P2.circumcenter
T.CP1P2   = triangle : new (z.C,z.P_1,z.P_2)
z.O_5     = T.CP1P2.circumcenter
\end{tkzelements}

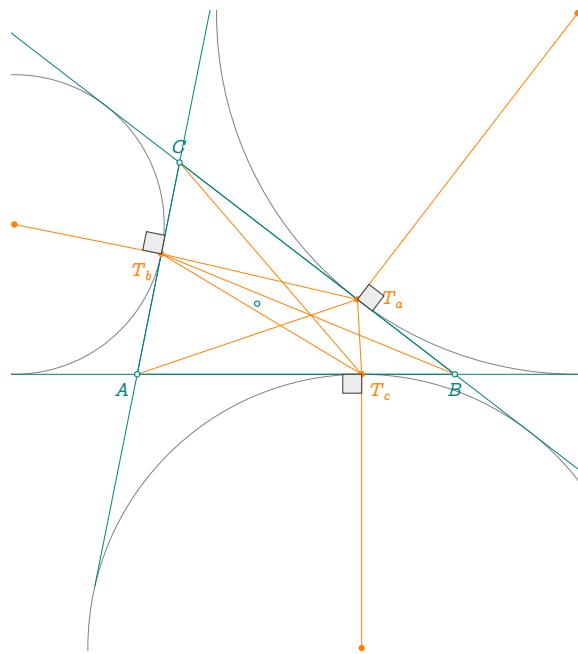
\begin{tikzpicture}
\tkzGetNodes
\tkzDrawSemiCircles[teal](O_Q,B)
\tkzDrawSemiCircles[teal,fill=teal!20,opacity=.5](O_1,C O_2,B)
\tkzDrawCircle[fill=green!10](O_4,P_Q)
\tkzDrawCircle[purple,fill=purple!10,opacity=.5](O_5,C)
\tkzDrawSegments(A,B O_Q,P' B,P A,Q)
\tkzDrawSegments(P,B Q,O_2 P,O_1)
\tkzDrawSegments[purple](O_5,P_2 O_5,P_1 O_5,C)
\tkzDrawPoints(A,B,C,P_Q,P_2,P_1,O_Q,O_1,O_2,O_4,O_5,Q,P,P',S)
\tkzLabelPoints[below](A,B,C,O_Q,O_1,O_2,P')
\tkzLabelPoints[above](Q,P)
\tkzLabelPoints[above right](P_Q,P_2,P_1,O_5,O_4,S)
\begin{scope}[font=\scriptsize]
\tkzLabelCircle[above](O_1,C)(120){$(\beta)$}
\tkzLabelCircle[above](O_2,B)(70){$(\gamma)$}
\tkzLabelCircle[above](O_Q,B)(110){$(\alpha)$}
\tkzLabelCircle[left](O_4,P_2)(60){$(\delta)$}
\tkzLabelCircle[left](O_5,C)(140){$(\epsilon)$}
\end{scope}
\end{tikzpicture}

```



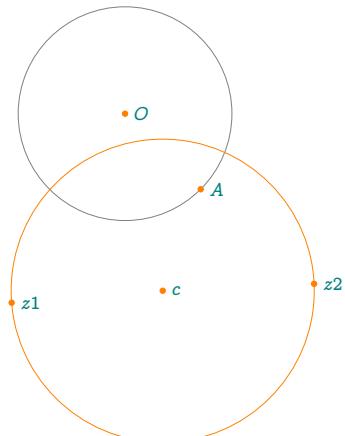
23.9 Excircles

```
\begin{tkzelements}
scale = 0.7
z.A = point: new (0,0)
z.B = point: new (6,0)
z.C = point: new (.8,4)
T = triangle: new ( z.A, z.B, z.C)
z.K = T.centroid
z.J_a,z.J_b,z.J_c = get_points (T: excentral())
z.T_a,z.T_b,z.T_c = get_points (T: extouch())
la = line: new ( z.A, z.T_a)
lb = line: new ( z.B, z.T_b)
z.G = intersection (la,lb)
\end{tkzelements}
\begin{tikzpicture}
\tkzGetNodes
\tkzDrawPoints[new](J_a,J_b,J_c)
\tkzClipBB
\tkzDrawCircles[gray](J_a,T_a J_b,T_b J_c,T_c)
\tkzDrawLines[add=1 and 1](A,B B,C C,A)
\tkzDrawSegments[new](A,T_a B,T_b C,T_c)
\tkzDrawSegments[new](J_a,T_a J_b,T_b J_c,T_c)
\tkzDrawPolygon(A,B,C)
\tkzDrawPolygon[new](T_a,T_b,T_c)
\tkzDrawPoints(A,B,C,K)
\tkzDrawPoints[new](T_a,T_b,T_c)
\tkzLabelPoints[below left](A)
\tkzLabelPoints[below](B)
\tkzLabelPoints[above](C)
\tkzLabelPoints[new,below left](T_b)
\tkzLabelPoints[new,below right](T_c)
\tkzLabelPoints[new,right=6pt](T_a)
\tkzMarkRightAngles[fill=gray!15](J_a,T_a,B J_b,T_b,C J_c,T_c,A)
\end{tikzpicture}
```



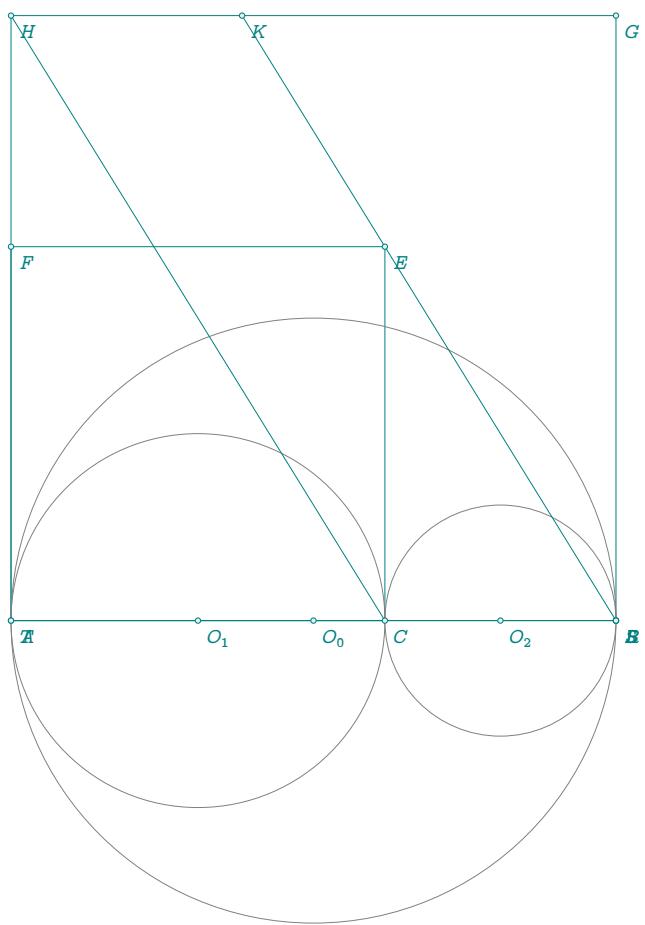
23.10 Orthogonal circle through

```
\begin{tkzelements}
z.0 = point: new (0,1)
z.A = point: new (1,0)
z.z1 = point: new (-1.5,-1.5)
z.z2 = point: new (2.5,-1.25)
C.0A = circle: new (z.0,z.A)
C = C.0A: orthogonal_through (z.z1,z.z2)
z.c = C.center
\end{tkzelements}
\begin{tikzpicture}
\tkzGetNodes
\tkzDrawCircle(0,A)
\tkzDrawCircle[new](c,z1)
\tkzDrawPoints[new](0,A,z1,z2,c)
\tkzLabelPoints[right](0,A,z1,z2,c)
\end{tikzpicture}
```



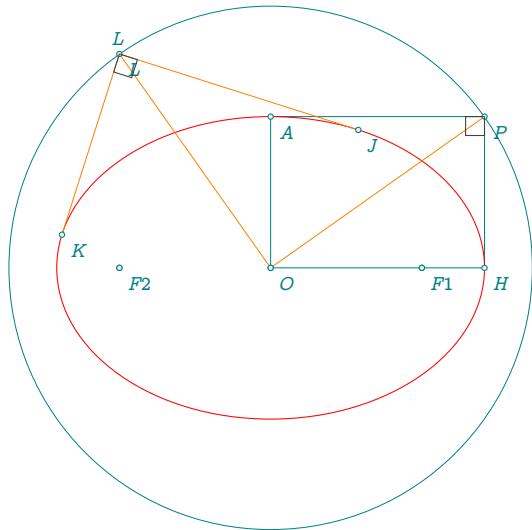
23.11 Divine ratio

```
\begin{tkzelements}
z.A      = point: new (0 , 0)
z.B      = point: new (8 , 0)
L.AB     = line: new (z.A,z.B)
z.C      = L.AB: gold_ratio ()
L.AC     = line: new (z.A,z.C)
z.O_1    = L.AC.mid
_,_,z.G,z.H = get_points(L.AB: square ())
_,_,z.E,z.F = get_points(L.AC: square ())
L.CB     = line: new (z.C,z.B)
z.O_2    = L.CB.mid
z.O_0    = L.AB.mid
L.BE     = line: new (z.B,z.E)
L.GH     = line: new (z.G,z.H)
z.K      = intersection (L.BE,L.GH)
CQ      = circle: new (z.O_0,z.B)
z.R,_   = intersection (L.BE,CQ)
C2      = circle: new (z.O_2,z.B)
z.S,_   = intersection (L.BE,C2)
L.AR    = line: new (z.A,z.R)
C1      = circle: new (z.O_1,z.C)
_,z.T   = intersection (L.AR,C1)
L.BG    = line: new (z.B,z.G)
z.L     = intersection (L.AR,L.BG)
\end{tkzelements}
\begin{tikzpicture}
\tkzGetNodes
\tkzDrawPolygons(A,C,E,F A,B,G,H)
\tkzDrawCircles(O_1,C O_2,B O_0,B)
\tkzDrawSegments(H,C B,K A,L)
\tkzDrawPoints(A,B,C,K,E,F,G,H,O_0,O_1,O_2,R,S,T,L)
\tkzLabelPoints(A,B,C,K,E,F,G,H,O_0,O_1,O_2,R,S,T,L)
\end{tikzpicture}
```



23.12 Director circle

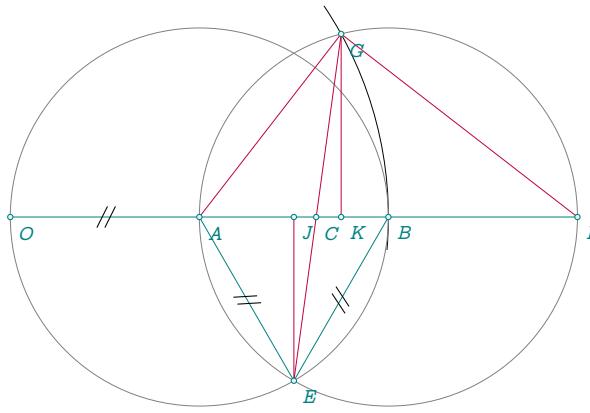
```
\begin{tkzelements}
scale      = .5
z.O       = point: new (0 , 0)
z.F1     = point: new (4 , 0)
z.F2     = point: new (-4 , 0)
z.H      = point: new (4*math.sqrt(2) , 0)
E        = ellipse: foci (z.F2,z.F1,z.H)
a,b      = E.Rx, E.Ry
z.A      = E.covertex
T        = triangle: new (z.H,z.O,z.A)
z.P      = T: parallelogram ()
C        = circle: new (z.O,z.P)
z.L      = C: point (0.25)
L.J,L.K = E: tangent_from (z.L)
z.J      = L.J.pb
z.K      = L.K.pb
\end{tkzelements}
\begin{tikzpicture}
\tkzGetNodes
\tkzDrawPoints(F1,F2,O)
\tkzDrawCircles[teal](O,P)
\tkzDrawPolygon(H,O,A,P)
\tkzDrawEllipse[red](O,\tkzUseLua{a},\tkzUseLua{b},0)
\tkzDrawSegments[orange](O,P O,L L,J L,K)
\tkzDrawPoints(F1,F2,O,H,A,P,L,J,K)
\tkzLabelPoints(F1,F2,O,H,A,P,L,J,K)
\tkzLabelPoints[above](L)
\tkzMarkRightAngles(A,P,H J,L,K)
\end{tikzpicture}
```



23.13 Gold division

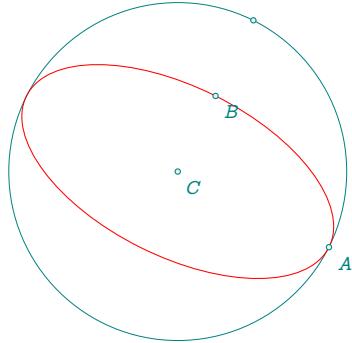
```
\begin{tkzelements}
z.A       = point: new (0,0)
z.B       = point: new (2.5,0)
L.AB     = line: new (z.A,z.B)
C.AB     = circle: new (z.A,z.B)
C.BA     = circle: new (z.B,z.A)
z.J       = L.AB: midpoint ()
L.JB     = line: new (z.J,z.B)
z.F,z.E = intersection (C.AB , C.BA)
z.I,_   = intersection (L.AB , C.BA)
z.K       = L.JB : midpoint ()
L.mediator = L.JB: mediator ()
z.G       = intersection (L.mediator,C.BA)
L.EG     = line: new (z.E,z.G)
z.C       = intersection (L.EG,L.AB)
z.O       = C.AB: antipode (z.B)
\end{tkzelements}
\begin{tikzpicture}
\tkzGetNodes
\tkzGetNodes
```

```
\tkzDrawArc [delta=5] (O,B) (G)
\tkzDrawCircles(A,B B,A)
\tkzDrawSegments(A,E B,E O,I)
\tkzDrawSegments[purple](J,E A,G G,I K,G E,G)
\tkzMarkSegments[mark=s||](A,E B,E O,A)
\tkzDrawPoints(A,B,C,E,I,J,G,O,K)
\tkzLabelPoints(A,B,C,E,I,J,G,O,K)
\end{tikzpicture}
```



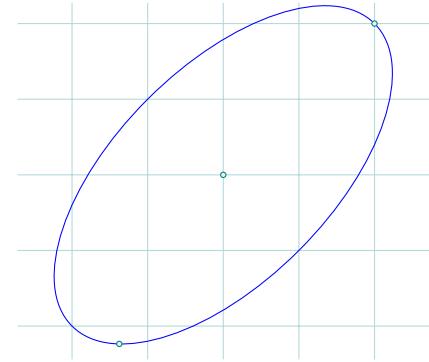
23.14 Ellipse

```
\begin{tkzelements}
z.C      = point: new (3 , 2)
z.A      = point: new (5 , 1)
L.CA     = line : new (z.C,z.A)
z.b      = L.CA.north_pa
L       = line : new (z.C,z.b)
z.B      = L : point (0.5)
E       = ellipse: new (z.C,z.A,z.B)
a       = E.Rx
b       = E.Ry
slope   = math.deg(E.slope)
\end{tkzelements}
\begin{tikzpicture}
\tkzGetNodes
\tkzDrawCircles[teal](C,A)
\tkzDrawEllipse[red](C,\tkzUseLua{a},\tkzUseLua{b},\tkzUseLua{slope})
\tkzDrawPoints(C,A,B,b)
\tkzLabelPoints(C,A,B)
\end{tikzpicture}
```



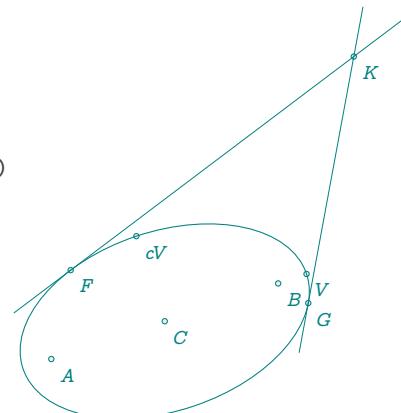
23.15 Ellipse with radii

```
\begin{tkzelements}
scale=.5
z.C = point: new (0 , 4)
b = value(math.sqrt(8))
a = value(math.sqrt(32))
ang = math.deg(math.pi/4)
E = ellipse: radii (z.C,a,b,math.pi/4)
z.V = E : point (0)
z.CoV = E : point (math.pi/2)
\end{tkzelements}
\begin{tikzpicture}[gridded]
\tkzGetNodes
\tkzDrawEllipse[blue] (C,\tkzUseLua{a},
                      \tkzUseLua{b},\tkzUseLua{ang})
\tkzDrawPoints(C,V,CoV)
\end{tikzpicture}
```



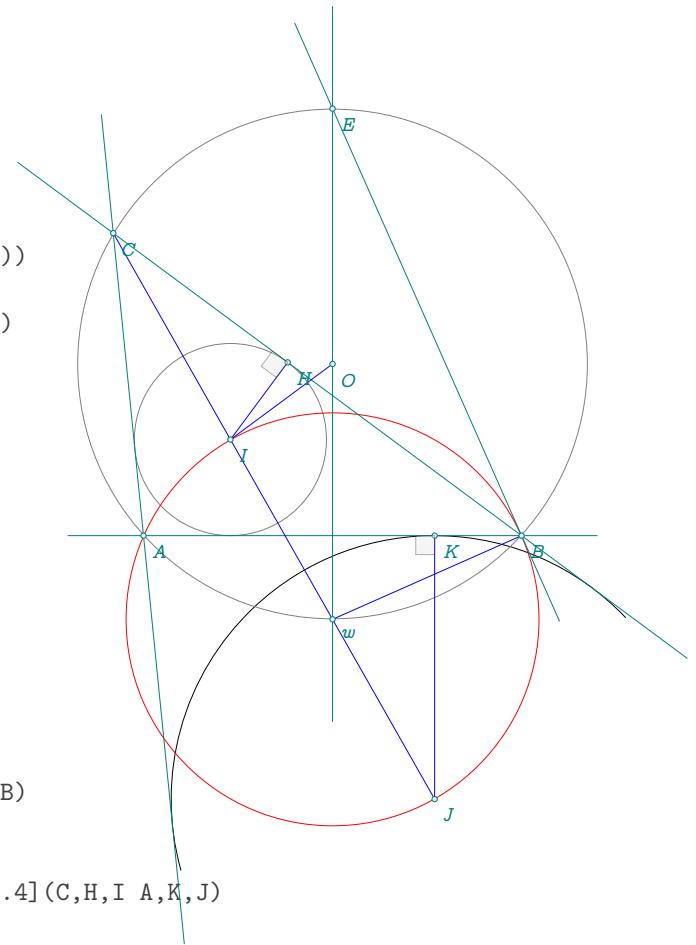
23.16 Ellipse_with_foci

```
\begin{tkzelements}
local e
e = .8
z.A = point: new (2 , 3)
z.B = point: new (5 , 4)
z.K = point: new (6, 7)
L.AB = line: new (z.A,z.B)
z.C = L.AB.mid
c = point.abs(z.B-z.C)
a = c/e
b = math.sqrt (a^2-c^2)
z.V = z.C + a*(z.B-z.C)/point.abs(z.B-z.C)
E = ellipse: foci (z.A,z.B,z.V)
z.cV = E.covertex
ang = math.deg(E.slope)
L.ta,L.tb = E: tangent_from (z.K)
z.F = L.ta.pb
z.G = L.tb.pb
\end{tkzelements}
\begin{tikzpicture}
\tkzGetNodes
\tkzDrawPoints(A,B,C,K,F,G,V,cV)
\tkzLabelPoints(A,B,C,K,F,G,V,cV)
\tkzDrawEllipse[teal] (C,\tkzUseLua{a},\tkzUseLua{b},\tkzUseLua{ang})
\tkzDrawLines(K,F K,G)
\end{tikzpicture}
```



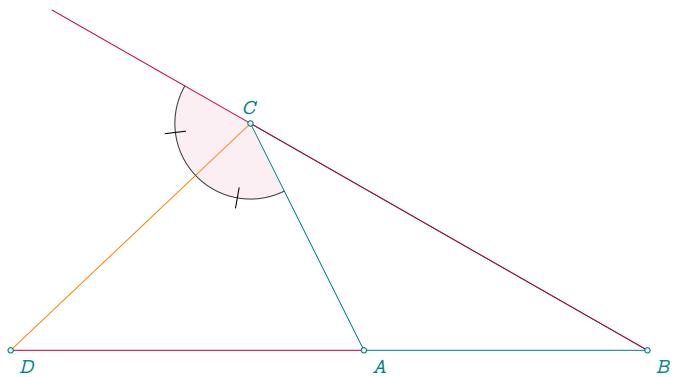
23.17 Euler relation

```
\begin{tkzelements}
scale      = .75
z.A       = point: new (0 , 0)
z.B       = point: new (5 , 0)
z.C       = point: new (-.4 , 4)
T.ABC     = triangle: new (z.A,z.B,z.C)
z.J,z.K   = get_points(T.ABC: ex_circle (2))
z.X,z.Y,z.K= T.ABC : projection (z.J)
z.I,z.H   = get_points(T.ABC : in_circle())
z.O       = T.ABC.circumcenter
C.OA      = circle : new (z.O,z.A)
T.IBA     = triangle: new (z.I,z.B,z.A)
z.w       = T.IBA.circumcenter
L.Ow      = line : new (z.O,z.w)
_,z.E     = intersection (L.Ow, C.OA)
\end{tkzelements}
\begin{tikzpicture}
\tkzGetNodes
\tkzDrawArc(J,X)(Y)
\tkzDrawCircles(I,H O,A)
\tkzDrawCircle[red](w,I)
\tkzDrawLines(Y,C A,B X,C E,w E,B)
\tkzDrawSegments[blue](J,C J,K I,H I,O w,B)
\tkzDrawPoints(A,B,C,I,J,E,w,H,K,O)
\tkzLabelPoints(A,B,C,J,I,w,H,K,E,O)
\tkzMarkRightAngles[fill=gray!20,opacity=.4](C,H,I A,K,J)
\end{tikzpicture}
```



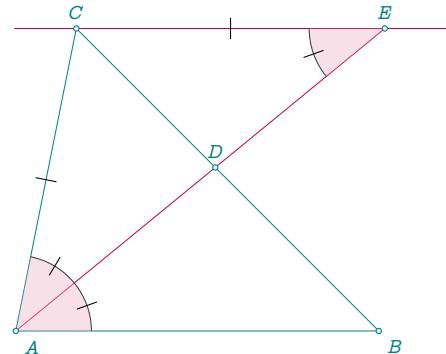
23.18 External angle

```
\begin{tkzelements}
scale = .75
z.A = point: new (0 , 0)
z.B = point: new (5 , 0)
z.C = point: new (-2 , 4)
T.ABC = triangle: new (z.A,z.B,z.C)
T.ext = T.ABC: excentral ()
z.O = T.ABC.circumcenter
z.D = intersection (T.ext.ab,T.ABC.ab)
z.E = z.C: symmetry (z.B)
\end{tkzelements}
\begin{tikzpicture}
\tkzGetNodes
\tkzDrawPolygon(A,B,C)
\tkzDrawLine[purple,add=0 and .5](B,C)
\tkzDrawSegment[purple](A,D)
\tkzDrawSegment[orange](C,D)
\tkzFillAngles[purple!30,opacity=.2](D,C,A E,C,D)
\tkzMarkAngles[mark=|](D,C,A E,C,D)
\tkzDrawPoints(A,...,D)
\tkzLabelPoints[above](C)
\tkzLabelPoints(A,B,D)
\end{tikzpicture}
```



23.19 Internal angle

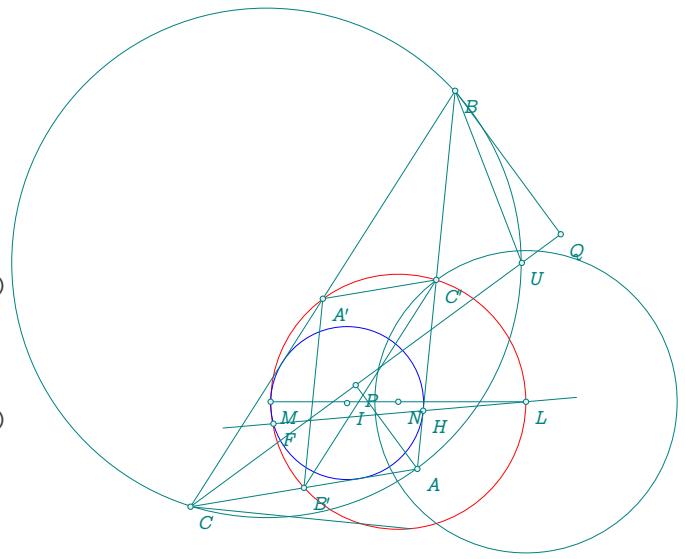
```
\begin{tkzelements}
scale = .8
z.A = point: new (0 , 0)
z.B = point: new (6 , 0)
z.C = point: new (1 , 5)
T = triangle: new (z.A,z.B,z.C)
z.I = T.incenter
L.AI = line: new (z.A,z.I)
z.D = intersection (L.AI, T.bc)
L.LL = T.ab: ll_from (z.C)
L.AD = line: new (z.A,z.D)
z.E = intersection (L.LL,L.AD)
\end{tkzelements}
\begin{tikzpicture}
\tkzGetNodes
\tkzDrawPolygon(A,B,C)
\tkzDrawLine[purple](C,E)
\tkzDrawSegment[purple](A,E)
\tkzFillAngles[purple!30,opacity=.4](B,A,C C,E,D)
\tkzMarkAngles[mark=|](B,A,D D,A,C C,E,D)
\tkzDrawPoints(A,...,E)
\tkzLabelPoints(A,B)
\tkzLabelPoints[above](C,D,E)
\tkzMarkSegments(A,C C,E)
\end{tikzpicture}
```



23.20 Feuerbach theorem

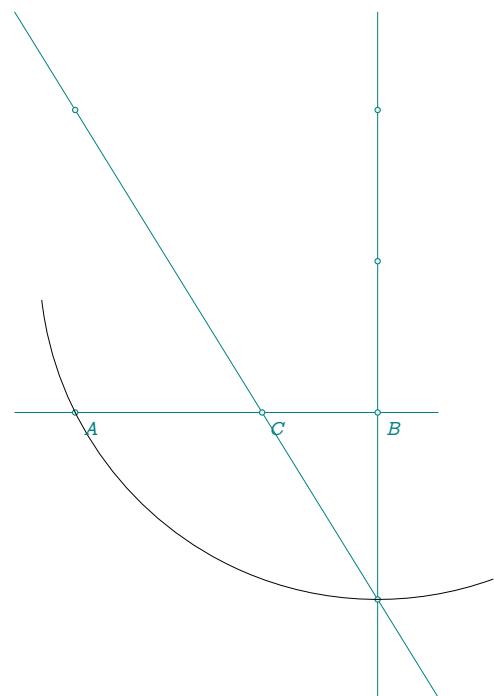
```
\begin{tkzelements}
scale      = 1.5
z.A        = point: new (0 , 0)
z.B        = point: new (5 , -0.5)
z.C        = point: new (-0.5 , 3)
T.ABC     = triangle: new (z.A,z.B,z.C)
z.O        = T.ABC.circumcenter
z.N        = T.ABC.eulercenter
z.I,z.K   = get_points(T.ABC: in_circle())
z.H        = T.ABC.ab : projection (z.I)
z.Ap,
z.Bp,
z.Cp      = get_points (T.ABC : medial ())
C.IH      = circle: new (z.I,z.H)
C.NAp    = circle: new (z.N,z.Ap)
C.OA      = circle: new (z.O,z.A)
z.U        = C.OA.south
z.L        = C.NAp.south
z.M        = C.NAp.north
z.X        = T.ABC.ab: projection (z.C)
L.CU      = line: new (z.C,z.U)
L.ML      = line: new (z.M,z.L)
z.P        = L.CU: projection (z.A)
z.Q        = L.CU: projection (z.B)
L.LH      = line: new (z.L,z.H)
z.F        = intersection (L.LH,C.IH) -- feuerbach
\end{tkzelements}
```

```
\begin{tikzpicture}
\tkzGetNodes
\tkzDrawLine(L,F)
\tkzDrawCircle[red](N,A')
\tkzDrawCircle[blue](I,H)
\tkzDrawCircles[teal](O,A,L,C')
\tkzDrawSegments(M,L B,U Q,C C,X A,P B,Q)
\tkzDrawPolygons(A,B,C A',B',C')
\tkzDrawPoints(A,B,C,N,H,A',B',C',U,L,M,P,Q,F,I)
\tkzLabelPoints(A,B,C,N,H,A',B',C',U,L,M,P,Q,F,I)
\end{tikzpicture}
```



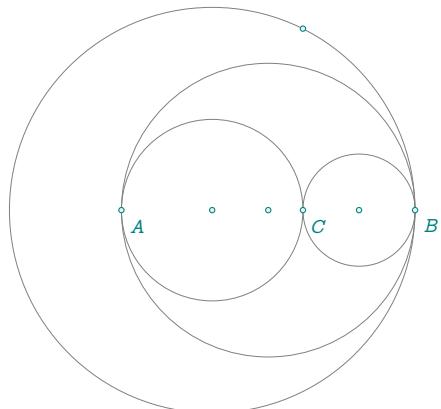
23.21 Gold ratio with segment

```
\begin{tkzelements}
z.A      = point: new (0 , 0)
z.B      = point: new (8 , 0)
L.AB     = line: new (z.A,z.B)
_,_,z.X,z.Y = get_points(L.AB: square ())
L.BX     = line: new (z.B,z.X)
z.M      = L.BX.mid
C.MA    = circle: new (z.M,z.A)
_,z.K    = intersection (L.BX,C.MA)
L.AK    = line: new (z.Y,z.K)
z.C      = intersection (L.AK,L.AB)
\end{tkzelements}
\begin{tikzpicture}
\tkzGetNodes
\tkzDrawLines(A,B X,K)
\tkzDrawLine[teal](Y,K)
\tkzDrawPoints(A,B,C,X,Y,M,K)
\tkzDrawArc[delta=20](M,A)(K)
\tkzLabelPoints(A,B,C)
\end{tikzpicture}
```



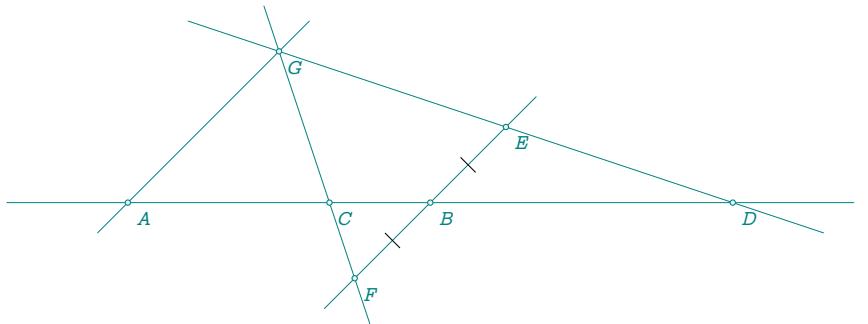
23.22 Gold Arbelos

```
\begin{tkzelements}
scale   = .6
z.A      = point: new (0 , 0)
z.C      = point: new (6 , 0)
L.AC     = line: new (z.A,z.C)
_,_,z.x,z.y = get_points(L.AC: square ())
z.O_1    = L.AC . mid
C       = circle: new (z.O_1,z.x)
z.B      = intersection (L.AC,C)
L.CB     = line: new (z.C,z.B)
z.O_2    = L.CB.mid
L.AB     = line: new (z.A,z.B)
z.O_Q    = L.AB.mid
\end{tkzelements}
\begin{tikzpicture}
\tkzGetNodes
\tkzDrawCircles(O_1,C O_2,B O_Q,B)
\tkzDrawPoints(A,C,B,O_1,O_2,O_Q)
\tkzLabelPoints(A,C,B)
\end{tikzpicture}
```



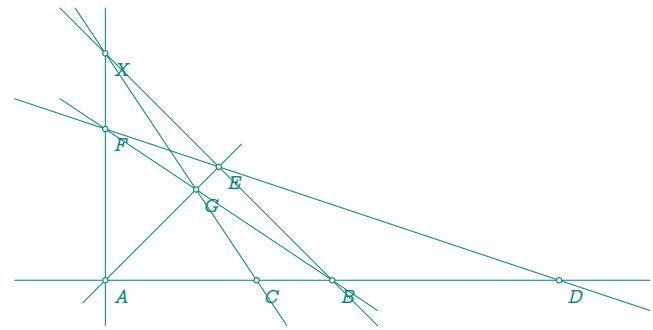
23.23 Harmonic division v1

```
\begin{tkzelements}
scale=.75
z.A = point: new (0 , 0)
z.B = point: new (4 , 0)
z.D = point: new (12,0)
L.AB = line : new (z.A,z.B)
z.X = L.AB.north_pa
L.XB = line : new (z.X,z.B)
z.E = L.XB.mid
L.DE = line : new (z.D,z.E)
L.XA = line : new (z.X,z.A)
z.F = intersection (L.DE,L.XA)
L.AE = line : new (z.A,z.E)
L.BF = line : new (z.B,z.F)
z.G = intersection (L.AE,L.BF)
L.XG = line : new (z.X,z.G)
z.C = intersection (L.XG,L.AB)
\end{tkzelements}
\begin{tikzpicture}
\tkzGetNodes
\tkzDefPoints{0/0/A,4/0/B}
\tkzDefPoints{2/2/G}
\tkzDefLine[parallel=through B,K=.5](A,G) \tkzGetPoint{E}
\tkzInterLL(G,E)(A,B) \tkzGetPoint{D}
\tkzDefPointBy[symmetry= center B](E) \tkzGetPoint{F}
\tkzInterLL(G,F)(A,B) \tkzGetPoint{C}
\tkzDrawLines(A,D A,G F,E G,F G,D)
\tkzDrawPoints(A,B,G,E,F,C,D)
\tkzLabelPoints(A,B,G,E,F,C,D)
\tkzMarkSegments(F,B B,E)
\end{tikzpicture}
```



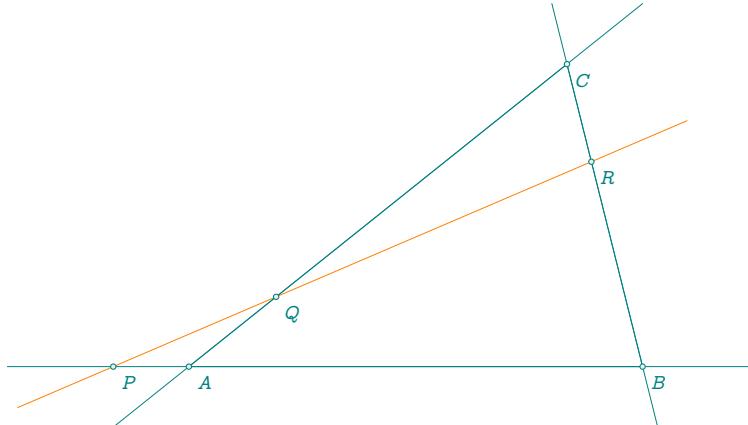
23.24 Harmonic division v2

```
\begin{tkzelements}
scale      = .5
z.A       = point: new (0 , 0)
z.B       = point: new (6 , 0)
z.D       = point: new (12 , 0)
L.AB     = line: new (z.A,z.B)
z.X      = L.AB.north_pa
L.XB     = line: new (z.X,z.B)
z.E      = L.XB.mid
L.ED     = line: new (z.E,z.D)
L.AX     = line: new (z.A,z.X)
L.AE     = line: new (z.A,z.E)
z.F      = intersection (L.ED,L.AX)
L.BF     = line: new (z.B,z.F)
z.G      = intersection (L.AE,L.BF)
L.GX     = line: new (z.G,z.X)
z.C      = intersection (L.GX,L.AB)
\end{tkzelements}
\begin{tikzpicture}
\tkzGetNodes
\tkzDrawLines(A,D A,E B,F D,F X,A X,B X,C)
\tkzDrawPoints(A,...,G,X)
\tkzLabelPoints(A,...,G,X)
\end{tikzpicture}
```



23.25 Menelaus

```
\begin{tkzelements}
z.A   = point: new (0 , 0)
z.B   = point: new (6 , 0)
z.C   = point: new (5 , 4)
z.P   = point: new (-1 , 0)
z.X   = point: new (6 , 3)
L.AC = line: new (z.A,z.C)
L.PX = line: new (z.P,z.X)
L.BC = line: new (z.B,z.C)
z.Q   = intersection (L.AC,L.PX)
z.R   = intersection (L.BC,L.PX)
\end{tkzelements}
\begin{tikzpicture}
\tkzGetNodes
\tkzDrawPolygon(A,B,C)
\tkzDrawLine[new](P,R)
\tkzDrawLines(P,B A,C B,C)
\tkzDrawPoints(P,Q,R,A,B,C)
\tkzLabelPoints(A,B,C,P,Q,R)
\end{tikzpicture}
```



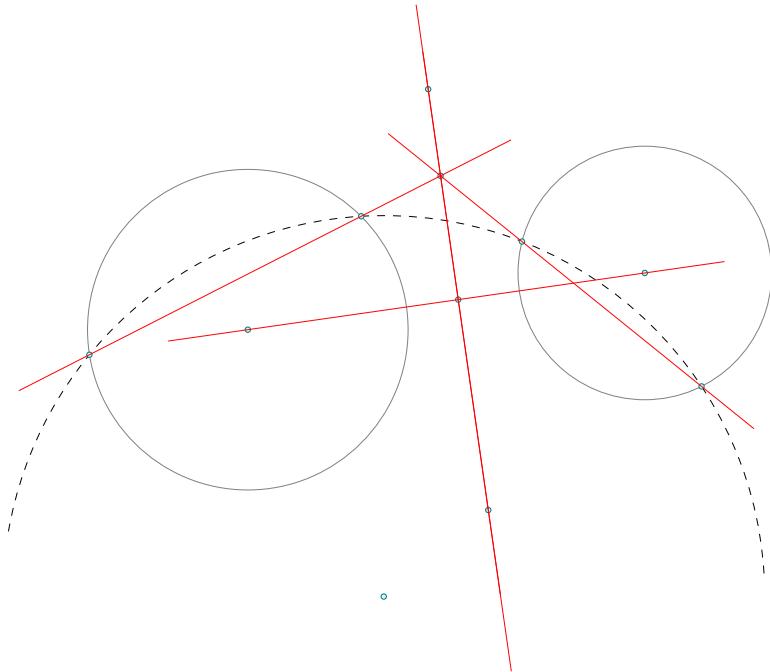
23.26 Radical axis v1

```
\begin{tkzelements}
scale    = .75
```

```

z.X      = point : new (Q,Q)
z.B      = point : new (2,2)
z.Y      = point : new (7,1)
z.Ap     = point : new (8,-1)
L.XY    = line : new (z.X,z.Y)
C.XB    = circle : new (z.X,z.B)
C.YAp   = circle : new (z.Y,z.Ap)
z.E,z.F = get_points (C.XB : radical_axis (C.YAp))
z.A      = C.XB : point (Q.4)
T.ABAp  = triangle: new (z.A,z.B,z.Ap)
z.O      = T.ABAp.circumcenter
C.OAp   = circle : new (z.O,z.Ap)
_,z.Bp   = intersection (C.OAp,C.YAp)
L.AB    = line : new (z.A,z.B)
L.ApBp  = line : new (z.Ap,z.Bp)
z.M      = intersection (L.AB,L.ApBp)
z.H      = L.XY : projection (z.M)
\end{tkzelements}
\begin{tikzpicture}
\tkzGetNodes
\tkzDrawCircles(X,B Y,A')
\tkzDrawArc[dashed,delta=3Q](O,A')(A)
\tkzDrawPoints(A,B,A',B',M,H,X,Y,O,E,F)
\tkzDrawLines[red](A,M A',M X,Y E,F)
\tkzDrawLines[red,add=1 and 3](M,H)
\end{tikzpicture}

```



23.27 Radical axis v2

```

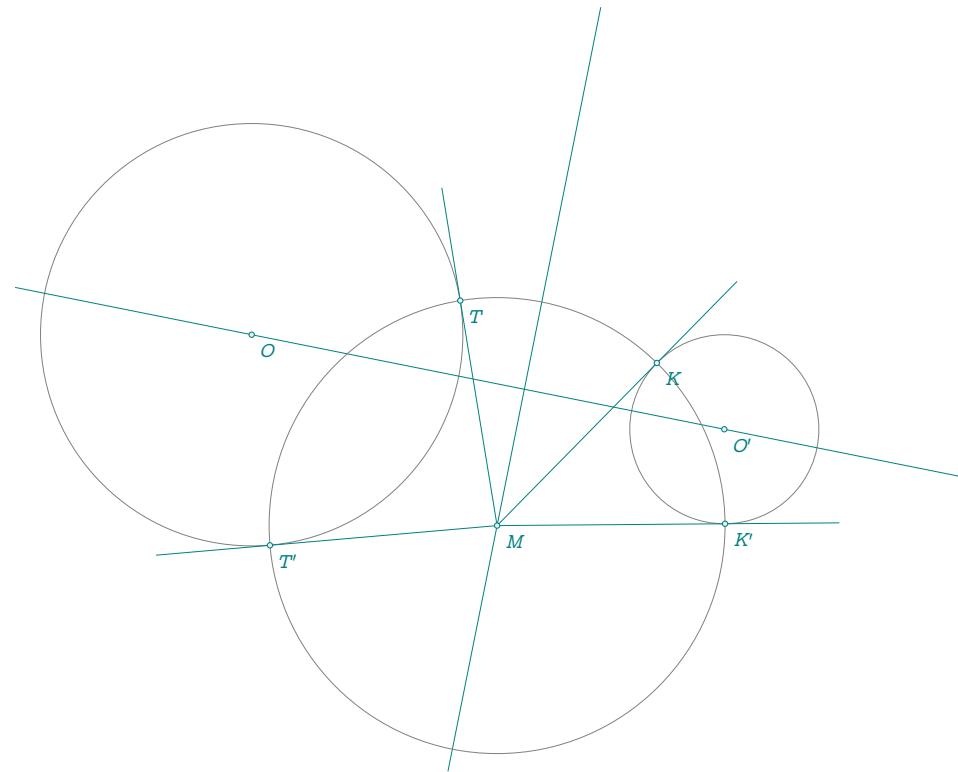
\begin{tkzelements}
scale      = 1.25
z.O       = point : new (-1,Q)
z.Op     = point : new (4,-1)

```

```

z.B      = point : new (0,2)
z.D      = point : new (4,0)
C.0B     = circle :    new (z.0,z.B)
C.0pD    = circle :    new (z.0p,z.D)
L.EF     = C.0B : radical_axis (C.0pD)
z.E,z.F = get_points (L.EF)
z.M      = L.EF : point (.75)
L.MT,L.MTp = C.0B : tangent_from (z.M)
_,z.T   = get_points (L.MT)
_,z.Tp  = get_points (L.MTp)
L.MK,L.MKp = C.0pD : tangent_from (z.M)
_,z.K   = get_points (L.MK)
_,z.Kp  = get_points (L.MKp)
\end{tkzelements}
\begin{tikzpicture}
\tkzGetNodes
\tkzDrawCircles(O,B O',D)
\tkzDrawLine(E,F)
\tkzDrawLine[add=.5 and .5](O,O')
\tkzDrawLines[add = 0 and .5](M,T M,T' M,K M,K')
\tkzDrawCircle(M,T)
\tkzDrawPoints(O,O',T,M,T',K,K')
\tkzLabelPoints(O,O',T,T',K,K',M)
\end{tikzpicture}

```



23.28 Radical axis v3

```

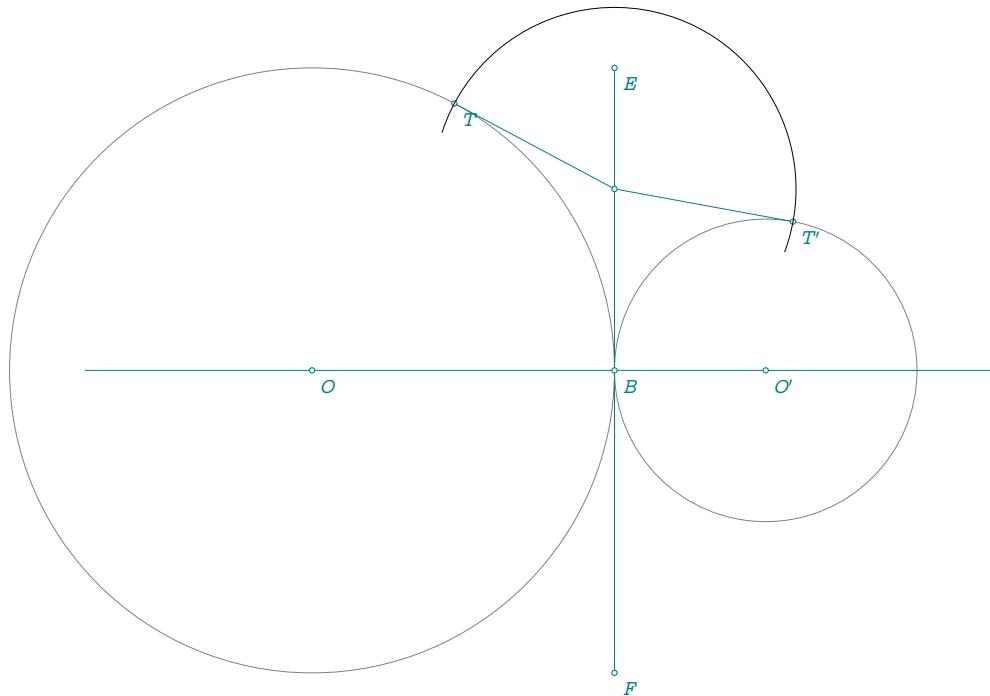
\begin{tkzelements}
z.0      = point : new (0,0)
z.B      = point : new (4,0)

```

```

z.Op    = point : new (6,0)
C.0B    = circle :   new (z.0,z.B)
C.OpB   = circle :   new (z.Op,z.B)
L.EF    = C.0B : radical_axis (C.OpB)
z.E,z.F = get_points(L.EF)
z.M     = L.EF : point (0.2)
L       = C.0B : tangent_from (z.M)
_,z.T   = get_points (L)
L       = C.OpB : tangent_from (z.M)
_,z.Tp  = get_points (L)
\end{tkzelements}
\begin{tikzpicture}
\tkzGetNodes
\tkzDrawCircles(O,B O',B)
\tkzDrawSegments(M,T M,T')
\tkzDrawSegments(E,F)
\tkzDrawLine[add=.5 and .5](O,O')
\tkzDrawPoints(O,B,O',E,F,M,T,T')
\tkzLabelPoints(O,O',B,E,F,T,T')
\tkzDrawArc(M,T')(T)
\end{tikzpicture}

```



23.29 Radical axis v4

```

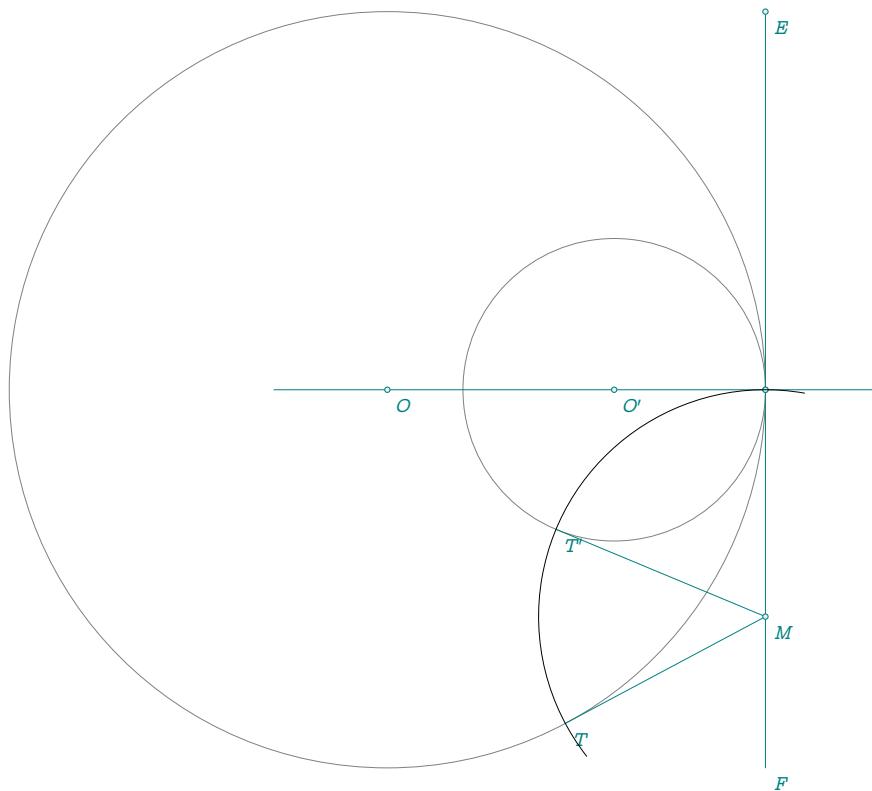
\begin{tkzelements}
z.0     = point : new (0,0)
z.B     = point : new (5,0)
z.Op    = point : new (3,0)
C.0B    = circle :   new (z.0,z.B)
C.OpB   = circle :   new (z.Op,z.B)
L.EF    = C.0B : radical_axis (C.OpB)

```

```

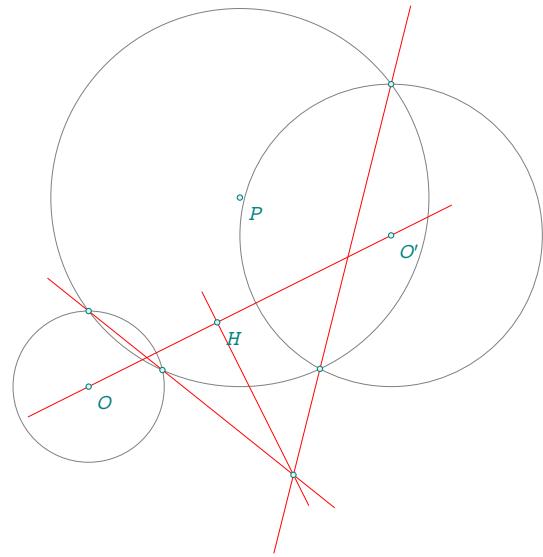
z.E,z.F = get_points(L.EF)
z.H      = L.EF.mid
z.M      = L.EF : point (.8)
_,L      = C.OB : tangent_from (z.M)
_,z.T    = get_points (L)
_,L      = C.OpB : tangent_from (z.M)
_,z.Tp   = get_points (L)
\end{tkzelements}
\begin{tikzpicture}
\tkzGetNodes
\tkzDrawCircles(O,B O',B)
\tkzDrawSegments(M,T M,T')
\tkzDrawSegments(E,F)
\tkzDrawLine[add=.3 and .3](O,H)
\tkzDrawPoints(O,O',B,E,H,M)
\tkzLabelPoints[below right](O,O',E,F,M,T,T')
\tkzDrawArc(M,B)(T)
\end{tikzpicture}

```



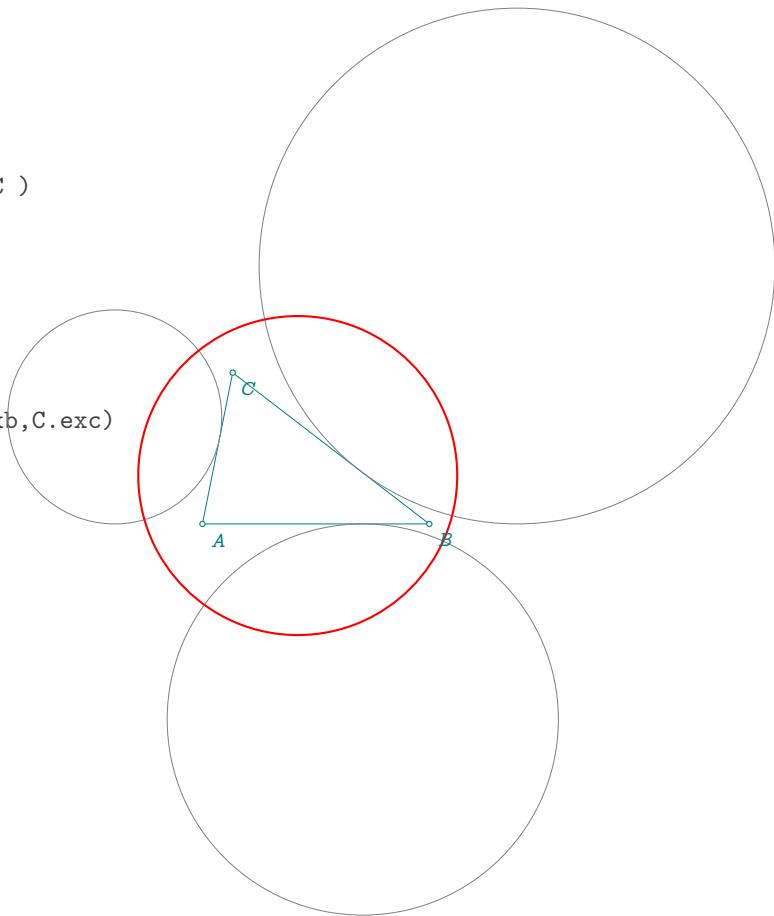
23.3Q Radical center

```
\begin{tkzelements}
z.O      = point : new (0,0)
z.x      = point : new (1,0)
z.y      = point : new (4,0)
z.z      = point : new (2,0)
z.Op     = point : new (4,2)
z.P      = point : new (2,2.5)
C.Ox    = circle : new (z.O,z.x)
C.Pz    = circle : new (z.P,z.z)
C.Opy   = circle : new (z.Op,z.y)
z.ap,z.a = intersection (C.Ox,C.Pz)
z.bp,z.b = intersection (C.Opy,C.Pz)
L.aap   = line : new (z.a,z.ap)
L.bbp   = line : new (z.b,z.bp)
z.X     = intersection (L.aap,L.bbp)
-- or z.X = radical_center(C.Ox,C.Pz,C.Opy)
L.0Op   = line : new (z.O,z.Op)
z.H     = L.0Op : projection (z.X)
\end{tkzelements}
\begin{tikzpicture}
\tkzGetNodes
\tkzDrawCircles(O,a O',b P,z)
\tkzDrawLines[red](a,X b',X H,X O,O')
\tkzDrawPoints(O,O',P,a,a',b,b',X,H)
\tkzLabelPoints[below right](O,O',P,H)
\end{tikzpicture}
```



23.31 Radical circle

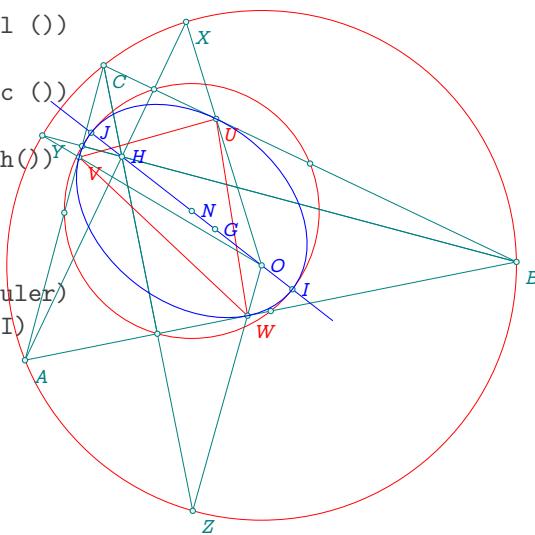
```
\begin{tkzelements}
scale      = .25
z.A        = point: new (0,0)
z.B        = point: new (6,0)
z.C        = point: new (0.8,4)
T.ABC      = triangle : new ( z.A,z.B,z.C )
C.exa      = T.ABC : ex_circle ()
z.I_a,z.Xa = get_points (C.exa)
C.exb      = T.ABC : ex_circle (1)
z.I_b,z.Xb = get_points (C.exb)
C.exc      = T.ABC : ex_circle (2)
z.I_c,z.Xc = get_points (C.exc)
C.ortho    = C.exa : radical_circle (C.exb,C.exc)
z.w,z.a   = get_points (C.ortho)
\end{tkzelements}
\begin{tikzpicture}
\tkzGetNodes
\tkzDrawPolygon(A,B,C)
\tkzDrawCircles(I_a,Xa I_b,Xb I_c,Xc)
\tkzDrawCircles[red,thick](w,a)
\tkzDrawPoints(A,B,C)
\tkzLabelPoints(A,B,C)
\end{tikzpicture}
```



23.32 Euler ellipse

```
\begin{tkzelements}
scale      = 1.3
z.A        = point: new (0 , 0)
z.B        = point: new (5 , 1)
L.AB       = line : new (z.A,z.B)
z.C        = point: new (.8 , 3)
T.ABC      = triangle: new (z.A,z.B,z.C)
z.N        = T.ABC.eulercenter
z.G        = T.ABC.centroid
z.O        = T.ABC.circumcenter
z.H        = T.ABC.orthocenter
z.Ma,z.Mb,
z.Mc      = get_points (T.ABC : medial ())
z.Ha,z.Hb,
z.Hc      = get_points (T.ABC : orthic ())
z.Ea,z.Eb,
z.Ec      = get_points (T.ABC: extouch())
L.euler    = T.ABC : euler_line ()
C.circum   = T.ABC : circum_circle ()
C.euler    = T.ABC : euler_circle ()
z.I,z.J    = intersection (L.euler,C.euler)
E          = ellipse: foci (z.H,z.O,z.I)
a          = E.Rx
b          = E.Ry
ang        = math.deg(E.slope)
L.AH       = line: new (z.A,z.H)
L.BH       = line: new (z.B,z.H)
L.CH       = line: new (z.C,z.H)
z.X        = intersection (L.AH,C.circum)
_,z.Y      = intersection (L.BH,C.circum)
_,z.Z      = intersection (L.CH,C.circum)
L.BC       = line: new (z.B,z.C)
L.XO       = line: new (z.X,z.O)
L.YO       = line: new (z.Y,z.O)
L.ZO       = line: new (z.Z,z.O)
z.x        = intersection (L.BC,L.XO)
z.U        = intersection (L.XO,E)
_,z.V      = intersection (L.YO,E)
_,z.W      = intersection (L.ZO,E)
\end{tkzelements}
```

```
\begin{tikzpicture}
\tkzGetNodes
\tkzDrawPolygon(A,B,C)
\tkzDrawCircles[red](N,Ma,O,A)
\tkzDrawSegments(A,X B,Y C,Z B,Hb C,Hc X,O Y,O Z,O)
\tkzDrawPolygon[red](U,V,W)
\tkzLabelPoints[red](U,V,W)
\tkzLabelPoints(A,B,C,X,Y,Z)
\tkzDrawLine[blue](I,J)
\tkzLabelPoints[blue,right](O,N,G,H,I,J)
\tkzDrawPoints(I,J,U,V,W)
\end{tikzpicture}
```

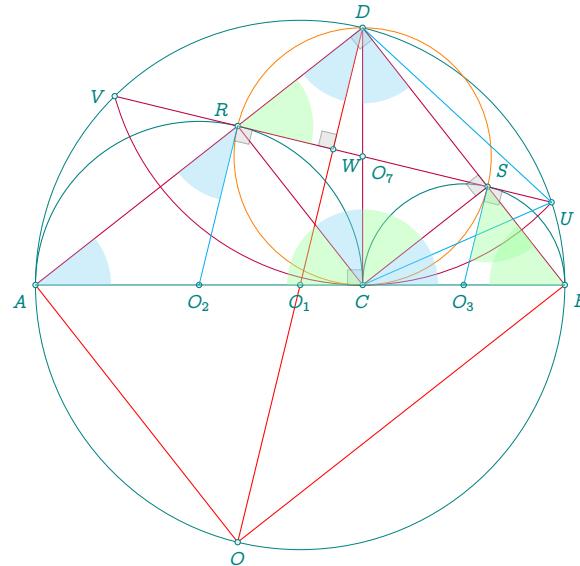


```
\tkzDrawPoints(A,B,C,N,G,H,O,X,Y,Z,Ma,Mb,Mc,Ha,Hb,Hc)
\tkzDrawEllipse[blue](N,\tkzUseLua{a},\tkzUseLua{b},\tkzUseLua{ang})
\end{tikzpicture}
```

23.33 Gold Arbelos properties

```
\begin{tkzelements}
z.A      = point : new(0,0)
z.B      = point : new(10,0)
z.C      = gold_segment_(z.A,z.B)
L.AB     = line:new (z.A,z.B)
z.O_1    = L.AB.mid
L.AC     = line:new (z.A,z.C)
z.O_2    = L.AC.mid
L.CB     = line:new (z.C,z.B)
z.O_3    = L.CB.mid
C1       = circle:new (z.O_1,z.B)
C2       = circle:new (z.O_2,z.C)
C3       = circle:new (z.O_3,z.B)
z.Q      = C2.north
z.P      = C3.north
L1       = line:new (z.O_2,z.O_3)
z.M_Q   = L1:harmonic_ext (z.C)
L2       = line:new (z.O_1,z.O_2)
z.M_1   = L2:harmonic_int (z.A)
L3       = line:new (z.O_1,z.O_3)
z.M_2   = L3:harmonic_int (z.B)
Lbq     = line:new (z.B,z.Q)
Lap     = line:new (z.A,z.P)
z.S      = intersection (Lbq,Lap)
z.x     = z.C: north ()
L       = line : new (z.C,z.x)
z.D,_   = intersection (L,C1)
L.CD    = line :new (z.C,z.D)
z.O_7   = L.CD.mid
C.DC   = circle: new (z.D,z.C)
z.U,z.V = intersection (C.DC,C1)
L.UV   = line :new (z.U,z.V)
z.R ,z.S = L.UV : projection (z.O_2,z.O_3)
L.O1D   = line : new (z.O_1,z.D)
z.W     = intersection (L.UV,L.O1D)
z.O     = C.DC : inversion (z.W)
\end{tkzelements}

\begin{tikzpicture}
\tkzGetNodes
\tkzDrawCircles[teal](O_1,B)
\tkzDrawSemiCircles[thin,teal](O_2,C O_3,B)
\tkzDrawArc[purple,delta=0](D,V)(U)
\tkzDrawCircle[new](O_7,C)
\tkzDrawSegments[thin,purple](A,D D,B C,R C,S C,D U,V)
\tkzDrawSegments[thin,red](O,D A,O O,B)
\tkzDrawPoints(A,B,C,D,O_7) %
\tkzDrawPoints(O_1,O_2,O_3,U,V,R,S,W,O)
```

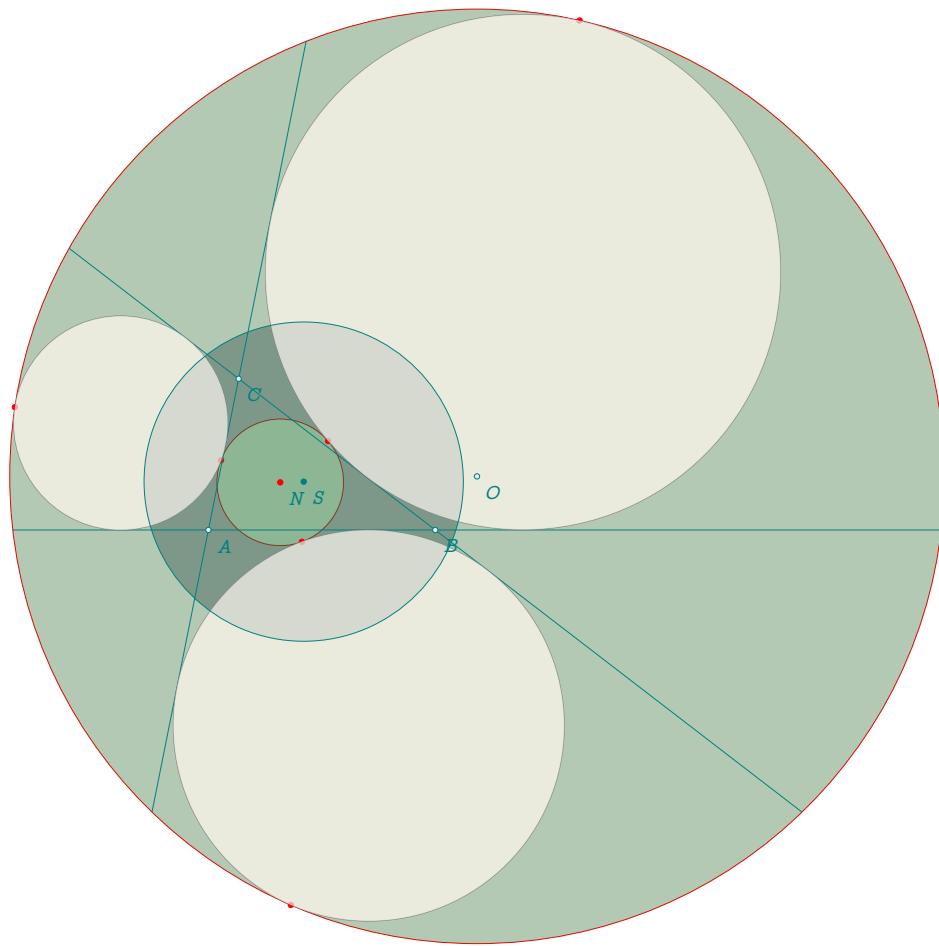


```
\tkzDrawSegments[cyan](O_3,S O_2,R)
\tkzDrawSegments[very thin](A,B)
\tkzDrawSegments[cyan,thin](C,U U,D)
\tkzMarkRightAngles[size=.2,fill=gray!40,opacity=.4](D,C,A A,D,B
D,S,C D,W,V O_3,S,U O_2,R,U)
\tkzFillAngles[cyan!40,opacity=.4](B,A,D A,D,O_1
C,D,B D,C,R B,C,S A,R,O_2)
\tkzFillAngles[green!40,opacity=.4](S,C,D W,R,D
D,B,C R,C,A O_3,S,B)
\tkzLabelPoints[below](C,O_2,O_3,O_1)
\tkzLabelPoints[above](D)
\tkzLabelPoints[below](O)
\tkzLabelPoints[below left](A)
\tkzLabelPoints[above left](R)
\tkzLabelPoints[above right](S)
\tkzLabelPoints[left](V)
\tkzLabelPoints[below right](B,U,W,O_7)
\end{tikzpicture}
```

23.34 Apollonius circle v1 with inversion

```
\begin{tkzelements}
scale          = .7
z.A           = point: new (0,0)
z.B           = point: new (6,0)
z.C           = point: new (0.8,4)
T.ABC         = triangle : new ( z.A,z.B,z.C )
z.N           = T.ABC.eulercenter
z.Ea,z.Eb,z.Ec = get_points ( T.ABC : feuerbach () )
z.Ja,z.Jb,z.Jc = get_points ( T.ABC : excentral () )
z.S           = T.ABC : spieker_center ()
C.JaEa        = circle : new (z.Ja,z.Ea)
C.ortho        = circle : radius (z.S,math.sqrt(C.JaEa : power (z.S) ))
z.a           = C.ortho.south
C.euler        = T.ABC: euler_circle ()
C.apo          = C.ortho : inversion (C.euler)
z.O           = C.apo.center
z.xa,z.xb,z.xc = C.ortho : inversion (z.Ea,z.Eb,z.Ec)
\end{tkzelements}
\begin{tikzpicture}
\tkzGetNodes
\tkzDrawCircles[red](O,xa N,Ea)
\tkzFillCircles[green!30!black,opacity=.3](O,xa)
\tkzFillCircles[yellow!30,opacity=.7](Ja,Ea Jb,Eb Jc,Ec)
\tkzFillCircles[teal!30!black,opacity=.3](S,a)
\tkzFillCircles[green!30,opacity=.3](N,Ea)
\tkzDrawPoints[red](Ea,Eb,Ec,xa,xb,xc,N)
\tkzClipCircle(O,xa)
\tkzDrawLines[add=3 and 3](A,B A,C B,C)
\tkzDrawCircles(Ja,Ea Jb,Eb Jc,Ec)
\tkzFillCircles[lightgray!30,opacity=.7](Ja,Ea Jb,Eb Jc,Ec)
\tkzDrawCircles[teal](S,a)
\tkzDrawPoints(A,B,C,O)
\end{tikzpicture}
```

```
\tkzDrawPoints[teal](S)
\tkzLabelPoints(A,B,C,O,S,N)
\end{tikzpicture}
```



23.35 Apollonius circle v2

```
\begin{tkzelements}
scale      = .5
z.A        = point: new (0,0)
z.B        = point: new (6,0)
z.C        = point: new (0.8,4)
T.ABC      = triangle: new(z.A,z.B,z.C)
z.O        = T.ABC.circumcenter
z.H        = T.ABC.orthocenter
z.G        = T.ABC.centroid
z.L        = T.ABC: lemoine_point ()
z.S        = T.ABC: spieker_center ()
C.euler    = T.ABC: euler_circle ()
z.N,z.Ma  = get_points (C.euler)
C.exA     = T.ABC : ex_circle ()
z.Ja,z.Xa = get_points (C.exA)
C.exB     = T.ABC : ex_circle (1)
z.Jb,z.Xb = get_points (C.exB)
C.exC     = T.ABC : ex_circle (2)
z.Jc,z.Xc = get_points (C.exC)

```

```

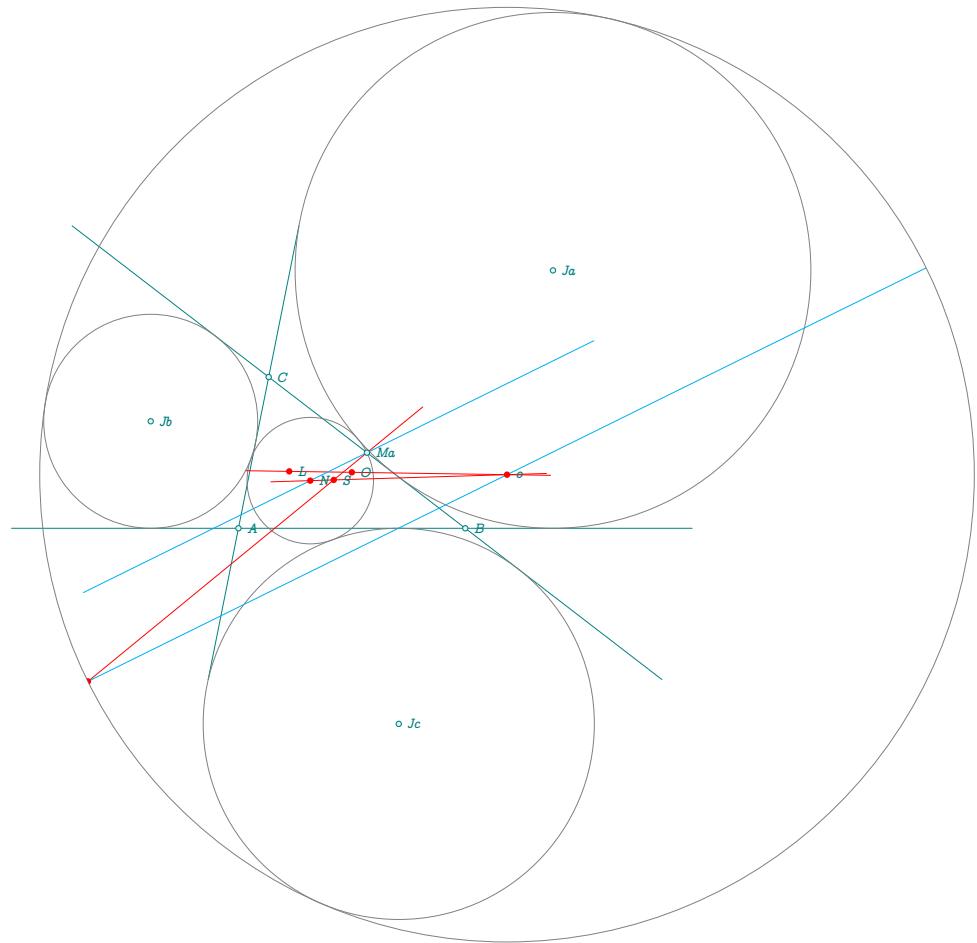
L.OL      = line: new (z.0,z.L)
L.NS      = line: new (z.N,z.S)
z.o      = intersection (L.OL,L.NS) -- center of Apollonius circle
L.NMa    = line: new (z.N,z.Ma)
L.ox     = L.NMa: ll_from (z.o)
L.MaS    = line: new (z.Ma,z.S)
z.t      = intersection (L.ox,L.MaS) -- through
\end{tkzelements}

```

```

\begin{tikzpicture}
\tkzGetNodes
\tkzDrawLines[add=1 and 1](A,B A,C B,C)
\tkzDrawCircles(Ja,Xa Jb,Xb Jc,Xc o,t N,Ma) %
\tkzClipCircle(o,t)
\tkzDrawLines[red](o,L N,o Ma,t)
\tkzDrawLines[cyan,add=4 and 4](Ma,N o,t)
\tkzDrawPoints(A,B,C,Ma,Ja,Jb,Jc)
\tkzDrawPoints[red](N,O,L,S,o,t)
\tkzLabelPoints[right,font=\tiny](A,B,C,Ja,Jb,Jc,O,N,L,S,Ma,o)
\end{tikzpicture}

```



23.36 Orthogonal circles v1

```

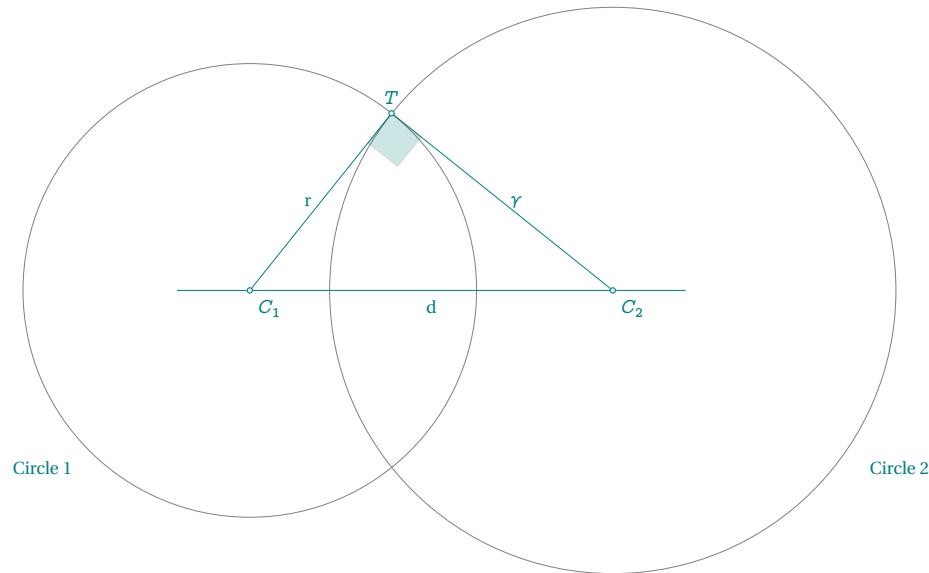
\begin{tkzelements}
scale    = .6

```

```

z.C_1    = point: new (0,0)
z.C_2    = point: new (8,0)
z.A      = point: new (5,0)
C       = circle: new (z.C_1,z.A)
z.S,z.T = get_points (C: orthogonal_from (z.C_2))
\end{tkzelements}
\begin{tikzpicture}
\tkzGetNodes
\tkzDrawCircles(C_1,T C_2,T)
\tkzDrawSegments(C_1,T C_2,T)
\tkzDrawLine(C_1,C_2)
\tkzMarkRightAngle[fill=teal,%
opacity=.2,size=1](C_1,T,C_2)
\tkzDrawPoints(C_1,C_2,T)
\tkzLabelPoints(C_1,C_2)
\tkzLabelPoints[above](T)
\tkzLabelSegment[left](C_1,T){r}
\tkzLabelSegments[right](C_2,T){$\gamma$}
\tkzLabelSegment[below](C_1,C_2){d}
\tkzLabelCircle[left=10pt](C_1,T)(180){Circle 1}
\tkzLabelCircle[right=10pt](C_2,T)(180){Circle 2}
\end{tikzpicture}

```



23.37 Orthogonal circles v2

```

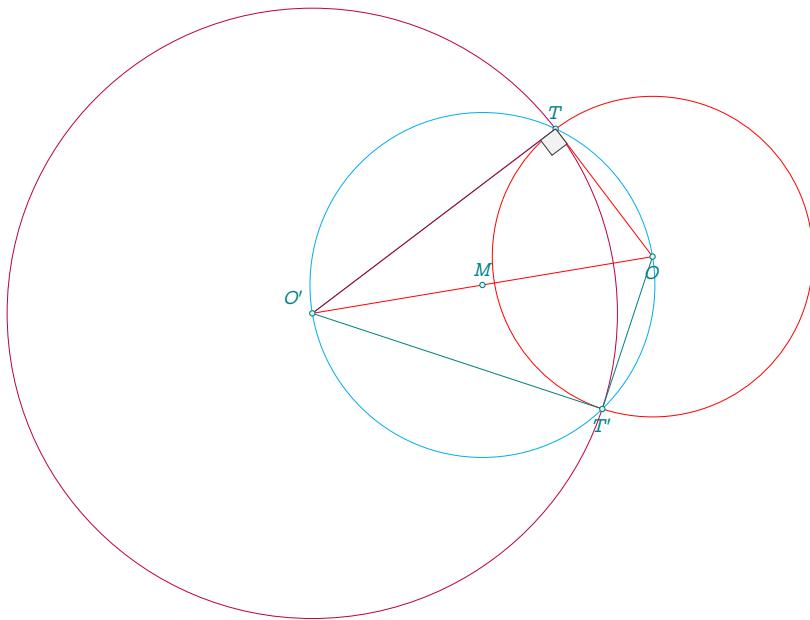
\begin{tkzelements}
scale    = .75
z.O      = point: new (2,2)
z.Op     = point: new (-4,1)
z.P      = point: polar (4,0)
C.OP    = circle: new (z.O,z.P)
C.Oz1   = C.OP : orthogonal_from (z.Op)
z.z1    = C.Oz1.through
L.OP    = line : new (z.O,z.P)
C.Opz1  = circle: new (z.Op,z.z1)
L.T,L.Tp = C.Opz1 : tangent_from (z.O)

```

```

z.T      = L.T.pb
z.Tp     = L.Tp.pb
L.00p    = line : new (z.0,z.0p)
z.M      = L.00p.mid
\end{tkzelements}
\begin{tikzpicture}
\tkzGetNodes
\tkzDrawCircle[red](O,P)
\tkzDrawCircle[purple](O',z1)
\tkzDrawCircle[cyan](M,T)
\tkzDrawSegments(O',T O,T' O',T')
\tkzDrawSegment[purple](O',T)
\tkzDrawSegments[red](O,T O,O')
\tkzDrawPoints(O,O',T,T',M)
\tkzMarkRightAngle[fill=gray!10](O',T,O)
\tkzLabelPoint[below](O){$O$}
\tkzLabelPoint[above](T){$T$}
\tkzLabelPoint[above](M){$M$}
\tkzLabelPoint[below](T'){$T'$}
\tkzLabelPoint[above left](O'){$O'$}
\end{tikzpicture}

```



23.38 Orthogonal circle to two circles

```

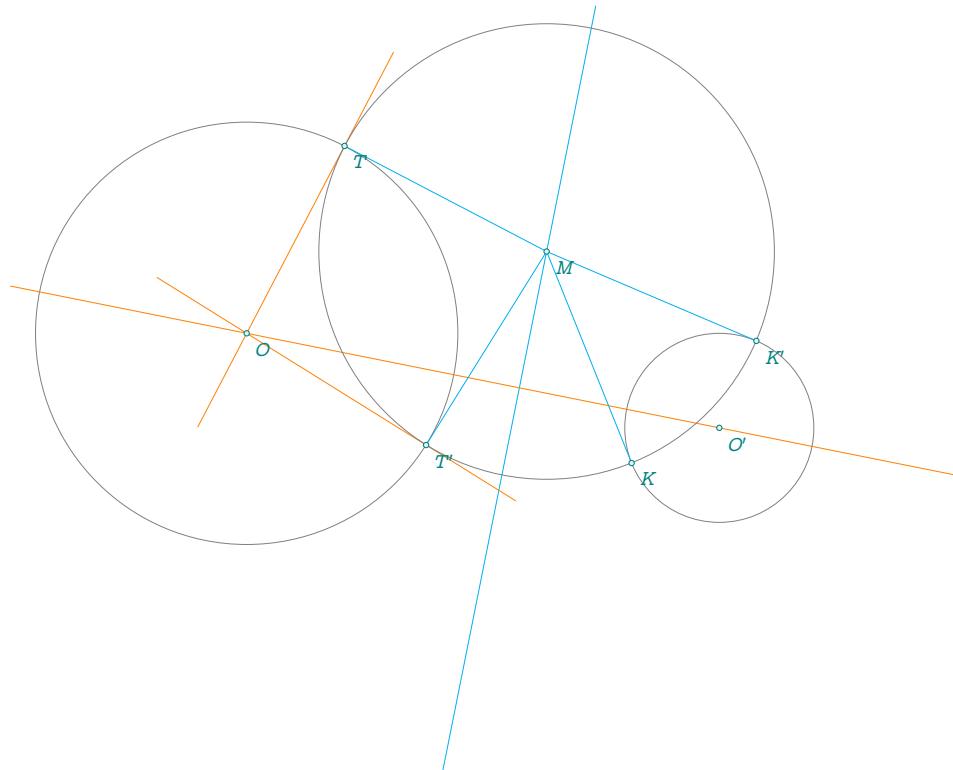
\begin{tkzelements}
z.0      = point : new (-1,0)
z.B      = point : new (0,2)
z.0p     = point : new (4,-1)
z.D      = point : new (4,0)
C.0B    = circle : new (z.0,z.B)
C.0pD   = circle : new (z.0p,z.D)
z.E,z.F = get_points (C.0B : radical_axis (C.0pD))
L.EF    = line : new (z.E,z.F)
z.M     = L.EF : point (.25)

```

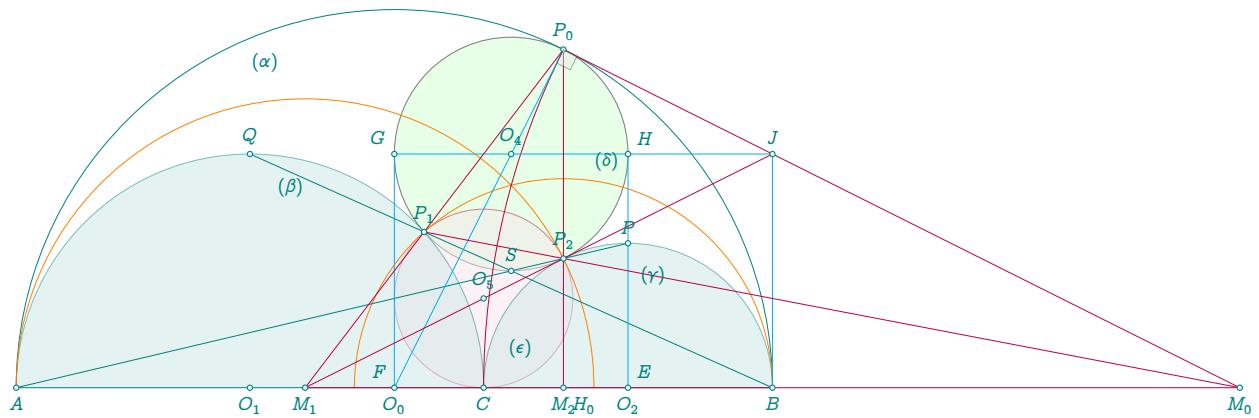
```

L.T,L.Tp      = C.Ob : tangent_from (z.M)
L.K,L.Kp      = C.OpD : tangent_from (z.M)
z.T           = L.T.pb
z.K           = L.K.pb
z.Tp          = L.Tp.pb
z.Kp          = L.Kp.pb
\end{tkzelements}
\begin{tikzpicture}
\tkzGetNodes
\tkzDrawCircles(O,B O',D)
\tkzDrawLine[cyan](E,F)
\tkzDrawLines[add=.5 and .5,orange](O,O' O,T O,T')
\tkzDrawSegments[cyan](M,T M,T' M,K M,K')
\tkzDrawCircle(M,T)
\tkzDrawPoints(O,O',T,M,T',K,K')
\tkzLabelPoints(O,O',T,T',M,K,K')
\end{tikzpicture}

```



23.39 Midcircles



```
\begin{tkzelements}
z.A      = point: new (Q , Q)
z.B      = point: new (1Q , Q)
L.AB    = line : new (z.A,z.B)
z.C      = L.AB: gold_ratio ()
L.AC    = line : new (z.A,z.C)
L.CB    = line : new (z.C,z.B)
z.O_0   = L.AB.mid
z.O_1   = L.AC.mid
z.O_2   = L.CB.mid
C.OQB  = circle : new (z.O_0,z.B)
C.01C  = circle : new (z.O_1,z.C)
C.02C  = circle : new (z.O_2,z.B)
z.Q    = C.01C : midarc (z.C,z.A)
z.P    = C.02C : midarc (z.B,z.C)
L.0102 = line : new (z.O_1,z.O_2)
L.0Q01 = line : new (z.O_0,z.O_1)
L.0Q02 = line : new (z.O_0,z.O_2)
z.M_Q  = L.0102 : harmonic_ext (z.C)
z.M_1  = L.0Q01 : harmonic_int (z.A)
z.M_2  = L.0Q02 : harmonic_int (z.B)
L.BQ   = line : new (z.B,z.Q)
L.AP   = line : new (z.A,z.P)
z.S    = intersection (L.BQ,L.AP)
L.CS   = line : new (z.C,z.S)
C.M1A  = circle : new (z.M_1,z.A)
C.M2B  = circle : new (z.M_2,z.B)
z.P_Q  = intersection (L.CS,C.OQB)
z.P_1  = intersection (C.M2B,C.01C)
z.P_2  = intersection (C.M1A,C.02C)
T.PQ12 = triangle : new (z.P_Q,z.P_1,z.P_2)
z.O_4  = T.PQ12.circumcenter
T.CP12 = triangle : new (z.C,z.P_1,z.P_2)
z.O_5  = T.CP12.circumcenter
z.BN   = z.B : north ()
L.BBN  = line : new (z.B,z.BN)
L.M1P2 = line : new (z.M_1,z.P_2)

```

```

z.J      = intersection (L.BBN,L.M1P2)
L.APQ    = line : new (z.A,z.P_0)
L.BPQ    = line : new (z.B,z.P_0)
C.04PQ   = circle : new (z.O_4,z.P_0)
_,z.G    = intersection (L.APQ,C.04PQ)
z.H      = intersection (L.BPQ,C.04PQ)
z.Ap     = z.M_1: symmetry (z.A)
z.H_4,z.F,z.E,z.H_0 = L.AB : projection (z.O_4,z.G,z.H,z.P_0)
\end{tkzelements}

\begin{tikzpicture}
\tkzGetNodes
\tkzDrawCircle[thin,fill=green!10](O_4,P_0)
\tkzDrawCircle[purple,fill=purple!10,opacity=.5](O_5,C)
\tkzDrawSemiCircles[teal](O_0,B)
\tkzDrawSemiCircles[thin,teal,fill=teal!20,opacity=.5](O_1,C O_2,B)
\tkzDrawSemiCircles[color = orange](M_2,B)
\tkzDrawSemiCircles[color = orange](M_1,A')
\tkzDrawArc[purple,delta=0](M_0,P_0)(C)
\tkzDrawSegments[very thin](A,B A,P B,Q)
\tkzDrawSegments[color=cyan](O_0,P_0 B,J G,J G,O_0 H,O_2)
\tkzDrawSegments[ultra thin,purple](M_1,P_0 M_2,P_0 M_1,M_0 M_0,P_1 M_0,P_0 M_1,J)
\tkzDrawPoints(A,B,C,P_0,P_2,P_1,M_0,M_1,M_2,J,P,Q,S)
\tkzDrawPoints(O_0,O_1,O_2,O_4,O_5,G,H)
\tkzMarkRightAngle[size=.2,fill=gray!20,opacity=.4](O_0,P_0,M_0)
\tkzLabelPoints[below](A,B,C,M_0,M_1,M_2,O_1,O_2,O_0)
\tkzLabelPoints[above](P_0,O_5,O_4)
\tkzLabelPoints[above](P_1,J)
\tkzLabelPoints[above](P_2,P,Q,S)
\tkzLabelPoints[above right](H,E)
\tkzLabelPoints[above left](F,G)
\tkzLabelPoints[below right](H_0)
\tkzLabelCircle[below=4pt,font=\scriptsize](O_1,C)(8){$\beta$}
\tkzLabelCircle[below=4pt,font=\scriptsize](O_2,B)(8){$\gamma$}
\tkzLabelCircle[below=4pt,font=\scriptsize](O_0,B)(11){$\alpha$}
\tkzLabelCircle[left,font=\scriptsize](O_4,P_2)(6){$\delta$}
\tkzLabelCircle[above left,font=\scriptsize](O_5,C)(4){$\epsilon$}
\end{tikzpicture}

```

23.40 Pencil v1

```

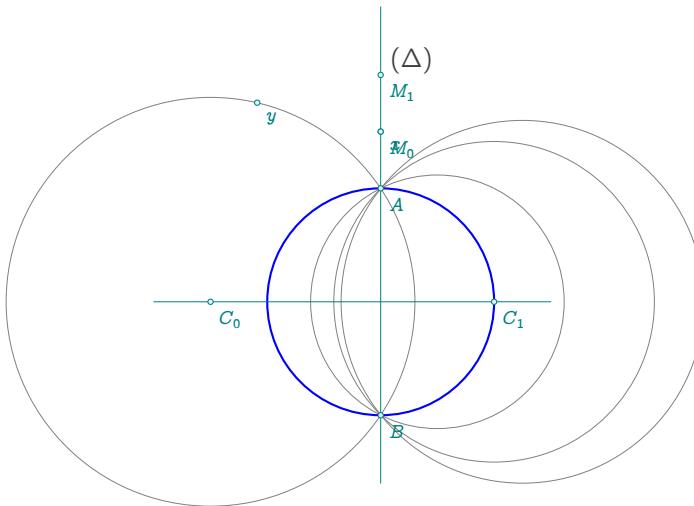
\begin{tkzelements}
scale      = .75
z.A       = point : new (0,2)
z.B       = point : new (0,-2)
z.C_0     = point : new (-3,0)
z.C_1     = point : new (2,0)
z.C_3     = point : new (2.5,0)
z.C_5     = point : new (1,0)
L.BA     = line : new (z.B,z.A)
z.M_0    = L.BA : point (1.25)
z.M_1    = L.BA : point (1.5)
C.CQA   = circle : new (z.C_0,z.A)
z.x,z.y = get_points (C.CQA : orthogonal_from (z.M_0))
\end{tkzelements}

```

```

z.xp,z.yp = get_points (C.CQA : orthogonal_from (z.M_1))
z.0        = L.BA.mid
\end{tkzelements}
\begin{tikzpicture}
\tkzGetNodes
\tkzDrawCircles(C_Q,A C_1,A C_3,A C_5,A)
\tkzDrawCircles[thick,color=red](M_Q,x M_1,x')
\tkzDrawCircles[thick,color=blue](0,A)
\tkzDrawLines(C_Q,C_1 B,M_1)
\tkzDrawPoints(A,B,C_Q,C_1,M_Q,M_1,x,y)
\tkzLabelPoints[below right](A,B,C_Q,C_1,M_Q,M_1,x,y)
\tkzLabelLine[pos=1.25,right] ( M_Q,M_1){$\Delta$}
\end{tikzpicture}

```



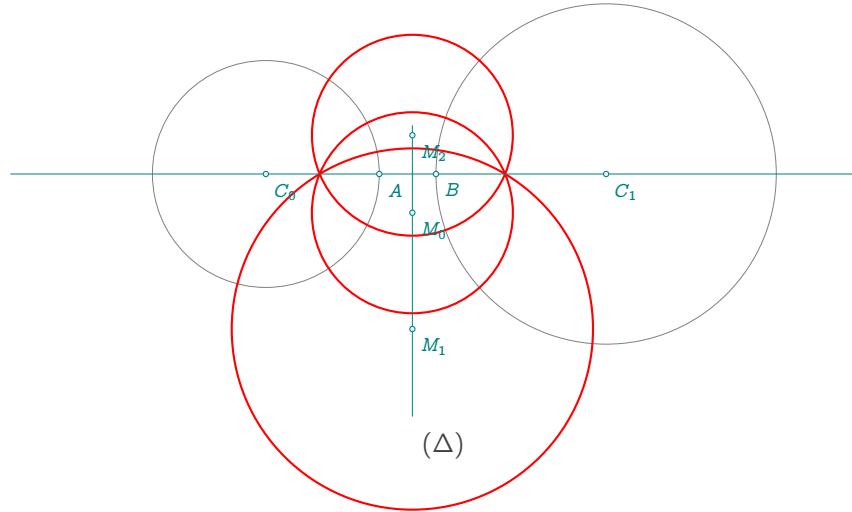
23.41 Pencil v2

```

\begin{tkzelements}
scale=.75
z.A      = point : new (Q,Q)
z.B      = point : new (1,Q)
z.C_Q   = point : new (-2,Q)
z.C_1   = point : new (4,Q)
C.CQA   = circle : new (z.C_Q,z.A)
C.C1B   = circle : new (z.C_1,z.B)
L.EF    = C.CQA : radical_axis (C.C1B)
z.M_Q   = L.EF : point (.4)
z.M_1   = L.EF : point (.1)
z.M_2   = L.EF : point (.6)
C.orthQ  = C.CQA : orthogonal_from (z.M_Q)
C.orth1  = C.CQA : orthogonal_from (z.M_1)
C.orth2  = C.CQA : orthogonal_from (z.M_2)
z.u     = C.orthQ.through
z.v     = C.orth1.through
z.t     = C.orth2.through
\end{tkzelements}
\begin{tikzpicture}
\tkzGetNodes
\tkzDrawCircles(C_Q,A C_1,B)

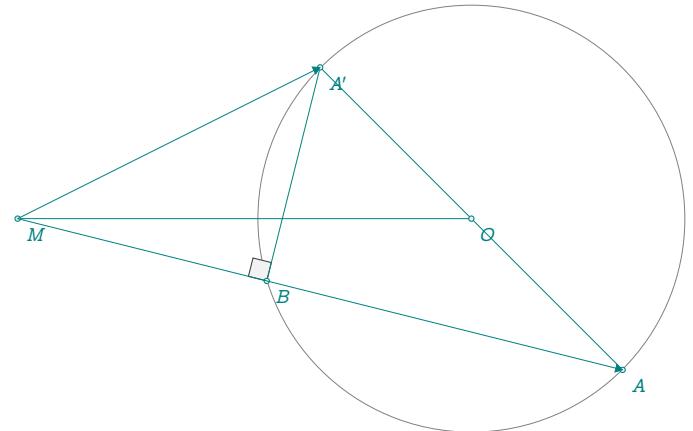
```

```
\tkzDrawCircles[thick,color=red](M_Q,u M_1,v M_2,t)
\tkzDrawLines[add= .75 and .75](C_Q,C_1 M_Q,M_1)
\tkzDrawPoints(A,B,C_Q,C_1,M_Q,M_1,M_2)
\tkzLabelPoints[below right](A,B,C_Q,C_1,M_Q,M_1,M_2)
\tkzLabelLine[pos=2,right]( M_Q,M_1){$\Delta$}
\end{tikzpicture}
```



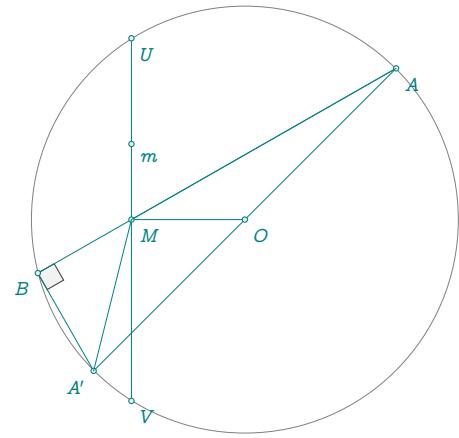
23.42 Power v1

```
\begin{tkzelements}
z.Q      = point : new (Q,Q)
z.A      = point : new (2,-2)
z.M      = point : new (-6,Q)
L.AM    = line : new (z.A,z.M)
C.OA    = circle : new (z.Q,z.A)
z.Ap    = C.OA : antipode (z.A)
z.B     = intersection (L.AM, C.OA)
\end{tkzelements}
\begin{tikzpicture}
\tkzGetNodes
\tkzDrawCircle(O,A)
\tkzMarkRightAngle[fill=gray!10](A',B,M)
\tkzDrawSegments(M,O A,A' A',B)
\tkzDrawPoints(O,A,A',M,B)
\tkzLabelPoints(O,A,A',M,B)
\tkzDrawSegments[-Triangle](M,A M,A')
\end{tikzpicture}
```



23.43 Power v2

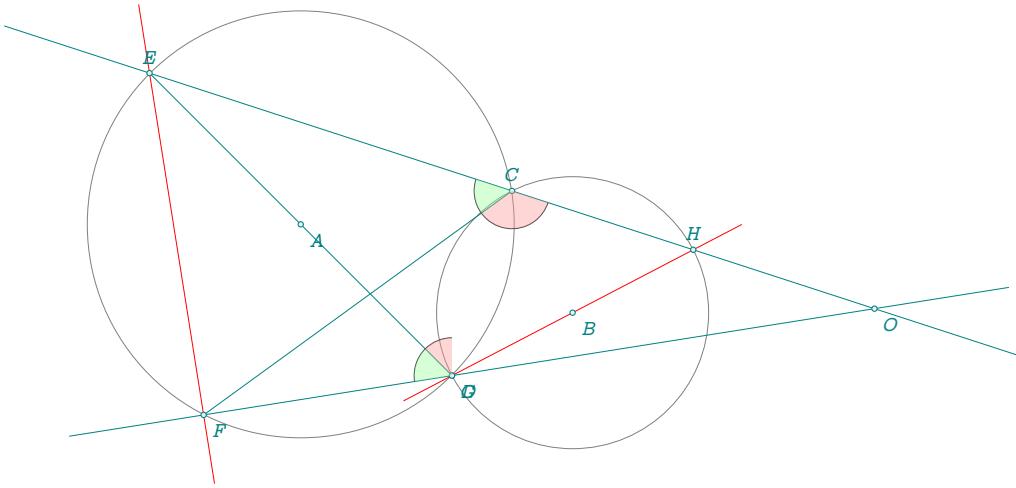
```
\begin{tkzelements}
z.O      = point : new (0,0)
z.A      = point : new (2,2)
z.M      = point : new (-1.5,0)
L.AM    = line : new (z.O,z.M)
C.OA    = circle : new (z.O,z.A)
z.Ap    = C.OA : antipode (z.A)
_,z.B   = intersection (L.AM, C.OA)
z.m     = z.M : north(1)
L.mm    = line : new (z.m,z.M)
z.U,z.V = intersection (L.mm,C.OA)
\end{tkzelements}
\begin{tikzpicture}
\tkzGetNodes
\tkzDrawCircle(O,A)
\tkzMarkRightAngle[fill=gray!10](A',B,M)
\tkzDrawSegments(M,O A,A',B A,B U,V)
\tkzDrawPoints(O,A,A',M,B,U,V,m)
\tkzLabelPoints(O,A,M,U,V,m)
\tkzLabelPoints[below left](A',B)
\tkzDrawSegments(M,A M,A')
\end{tikzpicture}
```



23.44 Reim v1

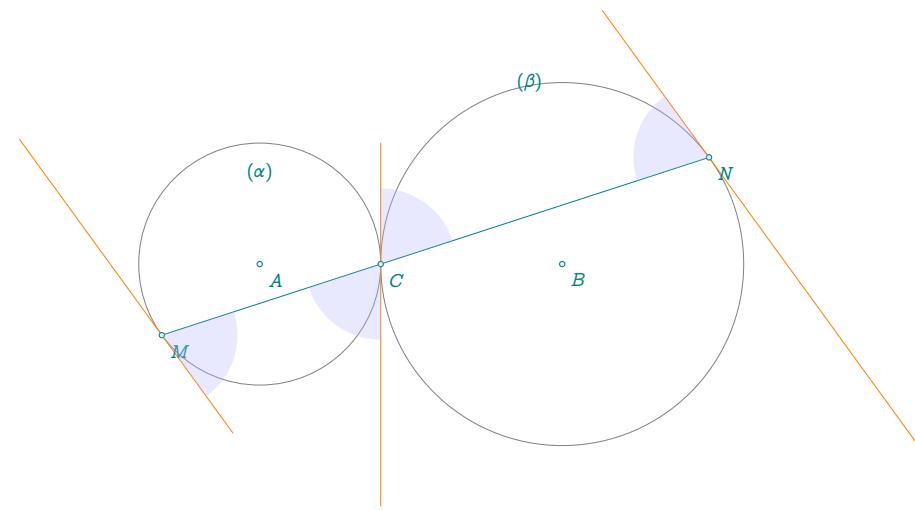
```
\begin{tkzelements}
z.A      = point: new (0,0)
z.E      = point: new (-2,2)
C.AE    = circle : new (z.A,z.E)
z.C      = C.AE : point (0.65)
z.D      = C.AE : point (0.5)
z.F      = C.AE : point (0.30)
L.EC    = line: new (z.E,z.C)
z.H      = L.EC : point (1.5)
T.CDH   = triangle : new (z.C,z.D,z.H)
z.B      = T.CDH.circumcenter
C.BD    = circle : new (z.B,z.D)
L.FD    = line: new (z.F,z.D)
z.G      = intersection (L.FD,C.BD)
z.O      = intersection (L.EC,L.FD)
\end{tkzelements}
\begin{tikzpicture}
\tkzGetNodes
\tkzDrawCircles(A,E B,H)
\tkzDrawSegments(E,D C,F)
\tkzDrawLines(E,O F,O)
\tkzDrawLines[red](E,F H,G)
\tkzDrawPoints(A,...,H,O)
\tkzLabelPoints(A,B,D,F,G,O)
\tkzLabelPoints[above](E,C,H)
\tkzMarkAngles[size=.5](E,C,F E,D,F)
\end{tikzpicture}
```

```
\tkzFillAngles[green!40,opacity=.4,size=.5](E,C,F E,D,F)
\tkzMarkAngles[size=.5](F,C,H G,D,E)
\tkzFillAngles[red!40,opacity=.4,size=.5](F,C,H G,D,E)
\end{tikzpicture}
```



23.45 Reim v2

```
\begin{tkzelements}
scale      = .6
z.A        = point: new (0,0)
z.B        = point: new (10,0)
z.C        = point: new (4,0)
C.AC      = circle: new (z.A,z.C)
z.c,z.cp = get_points (C.AC: tangent_at (z.C))
z.M        = C.AC: point (0.6)
L.MC      = line: new (z.M,z.C)
C.BC      = circle: new (z.B,z.C)
z.N        = intersection (L.MC,C.BC)
z.m,z.mp = get_points (C.AC: tangent_at (z.M))
z.n,z.np = get_points (C.BC: tangent_at (z.N))
\end{tkzelements}
\begin{tikzpicture}
\tkzGetNodes
\tkzDrawCircles(A,C B,C)
\tkzDrawLines[new,add=1 and 1](M,m N,n C,c)
\tkzDrawSegment(M,N)
\tkzDrawPoints(A,B,C,M,N)
\tkzLabelPoints[below right](A,B,C,M,N)
\tkzFillAngles[blue!30,opacity=.3](m',M,C N,C,c' M,C,c n',N,C)
\tkzLabelCircle[below=4pt,font=\scriptsize](A,C)(90){$\alpha$}
\tkzLabelCircle[left=4pt,font=\scriptsize](B,C)(-90){$\beta$}
\end{tikzpicture}
```



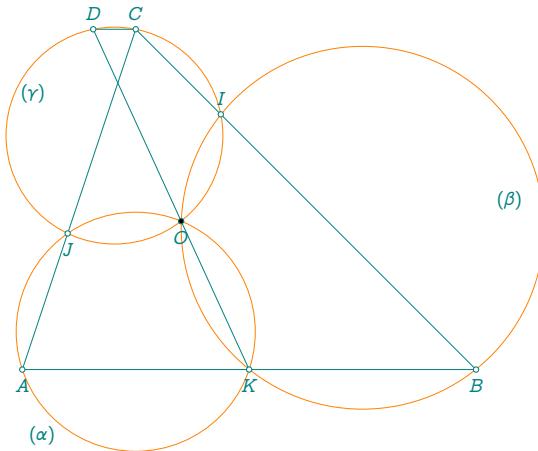
23.46 Reim v3

```
\begin{tkzelements}
z.A      = point: new (0,0)
z.B      = point: new (8,0)
z.C      = point: new (2,6)
L.AB    = line : new (z.A,z.B)
L.AC    = line : new (z.A,z.C)
L.BC    = line : new (z.B,z.C)
z.I     = L.BC : point (0.75)
z.J     = L.AC : point (0.4)
z.K     = L.AB : point (0.5)
T.AKJ   = triangle : new (z.A,z.K,z.J)
T.BIK   = triangle : new (z.B,z.I,z.K)
T.CIJ   = triangle : new (z.C,z.I,z.J)
z.x     = T.AKJ.circumcenter
z.y     = T.BIK.circumcenter
z.z     = T.CIJ.circumcenter
C.xK   = circle: new (z.x,z.K)
C.yK   = circle: new (z.y,z.K)
z.O,_  = intersection (C.xK,C.yK)
C.zO   = circle: new (z.z,z.O)
L.KO   = line: new (z.K,z.O)
z.D     = intersection (L.KO,C.zO)
\end{tkzelements}

\begin{tikzpicture}
\tkzGetNodes
\tkzDrawSegments(K,D D,C)
\tkzDrawPolygon[teal](A,B,C)
\tkzDrawCircles[orange](x,A y,B z,C)
\tkzDrawPoints[fill=white](A,B,C,I,J,K,O)
\tkzLabelPoints[below](A,B,J,K,O)
\tkzLabelPoints[above](C,D,I)
\tkzDrawPoints[fill=black](O)
\tkzLabelCircle[below=4pt,font=\scriptsize](x,A)(20){$(\alpha)$}
\tkzLabelCircle[left=4pt,font=\scriptsize](y,B)(60){$(\beta)$}

```

```
\tkzLabelCircle[below=4pt,font=\scriptsize](z,C)(6Q){$\gamma$}
\end{tikzpicture}
```

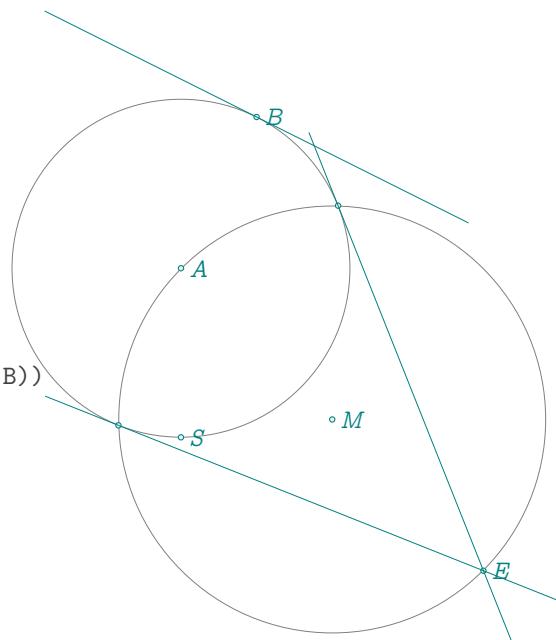


23.47 Tangent and circle

```

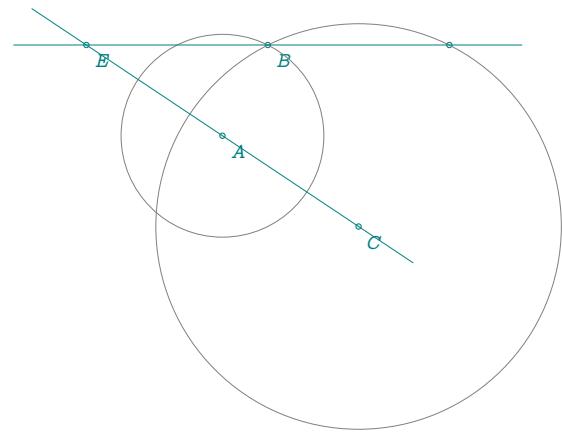
\begin{tkzelements}
z.A           = point:   new (1,0)
z.B           = point:   new (2,2)
z.E           = point:   new (5,-4)
L.AE          = line :    new (z.A,z.E)
C.AB          = circle:  new (z.A , z.B)
z.S           = C.AB.south
z.M           = L.AE.mid
L.Ti,L.Tj    = C.AB:    tangent_from (z.E)
z.i           = L.Ti.pb
z.j           = L.Tj.pb
z.k,z.l      = get_points (C.AB:  tangent_at (z.B))
\end{tkzelements}
\begin{tikzpicture}
\tkzGetNodes
\tkzDrawCircles(A,B M,A)
\tkzDrawPoints(A,B,E,i,j,M,S)
\tkzDrawLines(E,i E,j k,l)
\tkzLabelPoints[right,font=\small](A,B,E,S,M)
\end{tikzpicture}

```



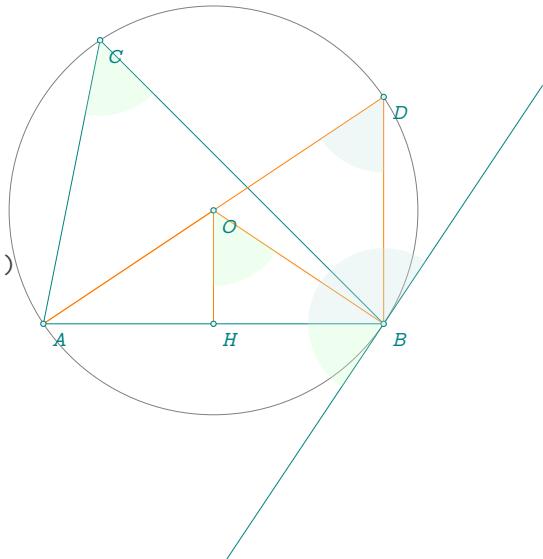
23.48 Homothety

```
\begin{tkzelements}
z.A      = point: new (0,0)
z.B      = point: new (1,2)
z.E      = point: new (-3,2)
z.C,z.D = z.E : homothety(2,z.A,z.B)
\end{tkzelements}
\begin{tikzpicture}
\tkzGetNodes
\tkzDrawPoints(A,B,C,E,D)
\tkzDrawCircles(A,B C,D)
\tkzDrawLines(E,C E,D)
\end{tikzpicture}
```



23.49 Tangent and chord

```
\begin{tkzelements}
scale      = .8
z.A        = point: new (0 , 0)
z.B        = point: new (6 , 0)
z.C        = point: new (1 , 5)
z.Bp       = point: new (2 , 0)
T.ABC     = triangle: new (z.A,z.B,z.C)
L.AB      = line: new (z.A,z.B)
z.O        = T.ABC.circumcenter
C.OA      = circle: new (z.O,z.A)
z.D        = C.OA: point (4.5)
L.AO      = line: new (z.A,z.O)
z.b1,z.b2 = get_points (C.OA: tangent_at (z.B))
z.H        = L.AB: projection (z.O)
\end{tkzelements}
\begin{tikzpicture}
\tkzGetNodes
\tkzDrawCircle(O,A)
\tkzDrawPolygon(A,B,C)
\tkzDrawSegments[new](A,O B,O O,H A,D D,B)
\tkzDrawLine(b1,b2)
\tkzDrawPoints(A,B,C,D,H,O)
\tkzFillAngles[green!20!,opacity=.3](H,O,B A,C,B A,B,b1)
\tkzFillAngles[teal!20!,opacity=.3](A,D,B b2,B,A)
\tkzLabelPoints(A,B,C,D,H,O)
\end{tikzpicture}
```



23.50 Three chords

```
\begin{tkzelements}
z.O  = point: new (0 , 0)
z.B  = point: new (0 , 2)
z.P  = point: new (1 , -.5)
C.OB = circle : new (z.O,z.B)
C.PB = circle : new (z.P,z.B)
_,z.A = intersection (C.OB,C.PB)
z.D  = C.PB: point(0.85)
\end{tkzelements}
```

```

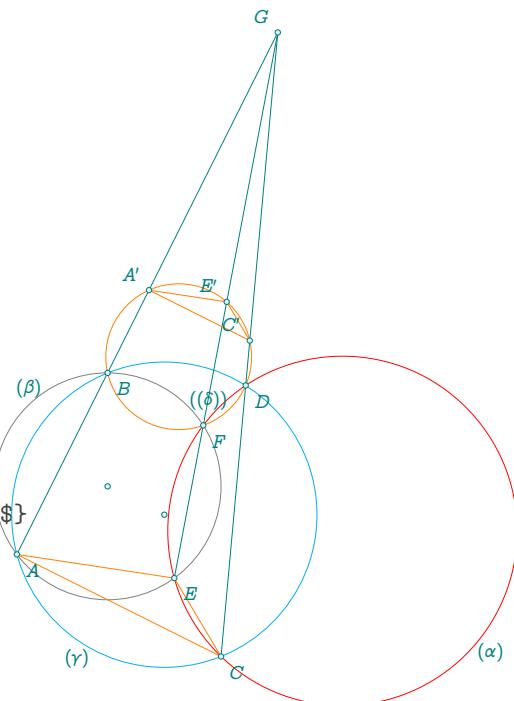
z.C = C.PB: point(0.5)
z.E = C.0B: point(0.6)
L.AB = line : new (z.A,z.B)
L.CD = line : new (z.C,z.D)
z.G = intersection (L.AB,L.CD)
L.GE = line : new (z.G,z.E)
z.F,_ = intersection (L.GE,C.0B)
T.CDE = triangle: new (z.C,z.D,z.E)
T.BFD = triangle: new (z.B,z.F,z.D)
z.w = T.CDE.circumcenter
z.x = T.BFD.circumcenter
L.GB = line : new (z.G,z.B)
L.GE = line : new (z.G,z.E)
L.GD = line : new (z.G,z.D)
C.xB = circle : new (z.x,z.B)
C.xF = circle : new (z.x,z.F)
C.xD = circle : new (z.x,z.D)
z.Ap = intersection (L.GB,C.xB)
z.Ep,_ = intersection (L.GE,C.xF)
z.Cp,_ = intersection (L.GD,C.xD)
\end{tkzelements}

```

```

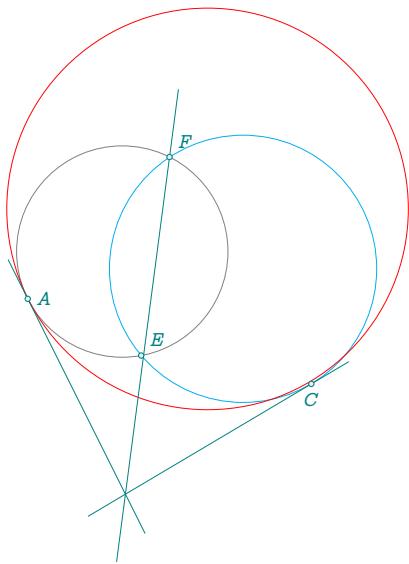
\begin{tikzpicture}
\tkzGetNodes
\tkzDrawCircles(O,B)
\tkzDrawCircles[cyan](P,B)
\tkzDrawCircles[red](w,E)
\tkzDrawCircles[new](x,F)
\tkzDrawSegments(A,G E,G C,G)
\tkzDrawPolygons[new](A,E,C A',E',C')
\tkzDrawPoints(A,...,G,A',E',C',O,P)
\begin{scope}[font=\scriptsize]
\tkzLabelPoints(A,...,F)
\tkzLabelPoints[above left](G,A',E',C')
\tkzLabelCircle[left](O,B)(30){$(\beta)$}
\tkzLabelCircle[below](P,A)(40){$(\gamma)$}
\tkzLabelCircle[right](w,C)(90){$(\alpha)$}
\tkzLabelCircle[left](x,B)(-230){$(\delta)$}
\end{scope}
\end{tikzpicture}

```



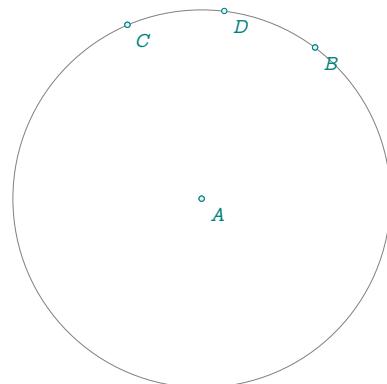
23.51 Three tangents

```
\begin{tkzelements}
z.A      = point: new (-1 , 0)
z.C      = point: new (4 , -1.5)
z.E      = point: new (1 , -1)
z.F      = point: new (1.5 , 2.5)
T.AEF    = triangle : new (z.A,z.E,z.F)
T.CEF    = triangle : new (z.C,z.E,z.F)
z.w     = T.AEF.circumcenter
z.x     = T.CEF.circumcenter
C.wE    = circle : new (z.w,z.E)
C.xE    = circle : new (z.x,z.E)
L.Aw    = line : new (z.A,z.w)
L.Cx    = line : new (z.C,z.x)
z.G     = intersection (L.Aw,L.Cx)
L.TA    = C.wE : tangent_at (z.A)
L.TC    = C.xE : tangent_at (z.C)
z.I     = intersection (L.TA,L.TC)
\end{tkzelements}
\begin{tikzpicture}
\tkzGetNodes
\tkzDrawCircles(w,E)
\tkzDrawCircles[cyan](x,E)
\tkzDrawCircles[red](G,A)
\tkzDrawLines(A,I C,I F,I)
\tkzDrawPoints(A,C,E,F)
\tkzLabelPoints[right](A)
\tkzLabelPoints[above right](E,F)
\tkzLabelPoints[below](C)
\end{tikzpicture}
```



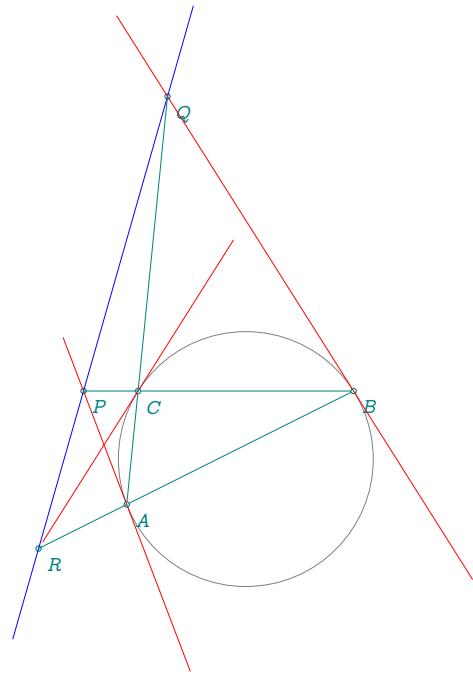
23.52 Midarc

```
\begin{tkzelements}
z.A      = point: new (-1,0)
z.B      = point: new (2,4)
C.AB    = circle: new (z.A,z.B)
z.C      = z.A: rotation (math.pi/3,z.B)
z.D      = C.AB: midarc (z.B,z.C)
\end{tkzelements}
\begin{tikzpicture}
\tkzGetNodes
\tkzDrawPoints(A,B,C)
\tkzDrawCircles(A,B)
\tkzDrawPoints(A,...,D)
\tkzLabelPoints(A,...,D)
\end{tikzpicture}
```



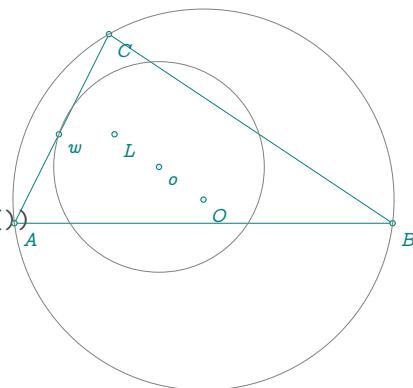
23.53 Lemoine Line without macro

```
\begin{tkzelements}
scale      = 1.6
z.A        = point: new (1,0)
z.B        = point: new (5,2)
z.C        = point: new (1.2,2)
T          = triangle: new(z.A,z.B,z.C)
z.O        = T.circumcenter
L.AB       = line: new (z.A,z.B)
L.AC       = line: new (z.A,z.C)
L.BC       = line: new (z.B,z.C)
C.OA       = circle: new (z.O,z.A)
z.Ar,z.Al = get_points (C.OA: tangent_at (z.A))
z.Br,z.Bl = get_points (C.OA: tangent_at (z.B))
z.Cr,z.Cl = get_points (C.OA: tangent_at (z.C))
L.tA       = line: new (z.Ar,z.Al)
L.tB       = line: new (z.Br,z.Bl)
L.tC       = line: new (z.Cr,z.Cl)
z.P        = intersection (L.tA,L.BC)
z.Q        = intersection (L.tB,L.AC)
z.R        = intersection (L.tC,L.AB)
\end{tkzelements}
\begin{tikzpicture}
\tkzGetNodes
\tkzDrawPolygon[teal](A,B,C)
\tkzDrawCircle(O,A)
\tkzDrawPoints(A,B,C,P,Q,R)
\tkzLabelPoints(A,B,C,P,Q,R)
\tkzDrawLine[blue](Q,R)
\tkzDrawLines[red](Ar,Al Br,Q Cr,Cl)
\tkzDrawSegments(A,R C,P C,Q)
\end{tikzpicture}
```



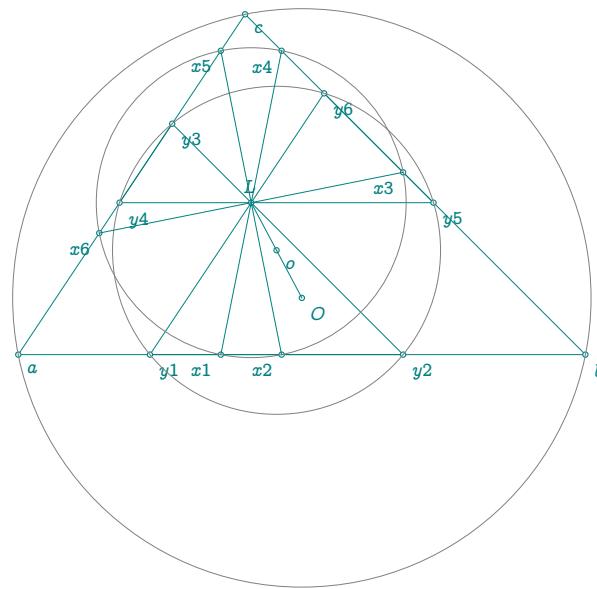
23.54 First Lemoine circle

```
\begin{tkzelements}
z.A      = point: new (1,1)
z.B      = point: new (5,1)
z.C      = point: new (2,3)
T        = triangle: new (z.A,z.B,z.C)
z.O      = T.circumcenter
z.o,z.w = get_points (T : first_lemoine_circle ())
z.L      = T : lemoine_point ()
\end{tkzelements}
\begin{tikzpicture}
\tkzGetNodes
\tkzDrawPolygons(A,B,C)
\tkzDrawPoints(A,B,C,o,w,O,L)
\tkzLabelPoints(A,B,C,o,w,O,L)
\tkzDrawCircles(o,w O,A)
\end{tikzpicture}
```



23.55 First and second Lemoine circles

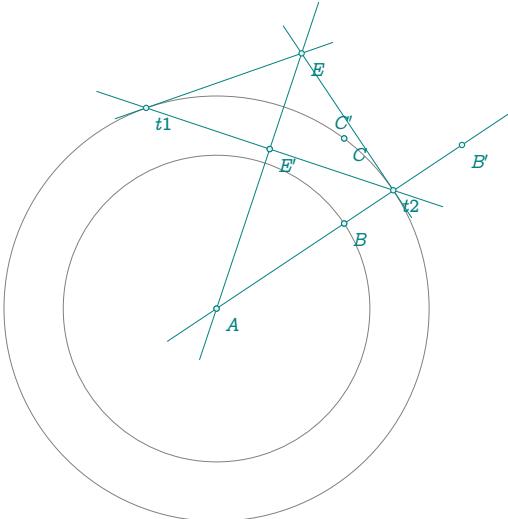
```
\begin{tkzelements}
scale          = 2
z.a           = point: new (0,0)
z.b           = point: new (5,0)
z.c           = point: new (2,3)
T             = triangle: new (z.a,z.b,z.c)
z.0           = T.circumcenter
z.o,z.p       = get_points (T : first_lemoine_circle ())
L.ab          = line : new (z.a,z.b)
L.ca          = line : new (z.c,z.a)
L.bc          = line : new (z.b,z.c)
z.L,z.x       = get_points (T : second_lemoine_circle ())
C.first_lemoine = circle : new (z.o,z.p)
z.y1,z.y2     = intersection (L.ab,C.first_lemoine)
z.y5,z.y6     = intersection (L.bc,C.first_lemoine)
z.y3,z.y4     = intersection (L.ca,C.first_lemoine)
C.second_lemoine = circle : new (z.L,z.x)
z.x1,z.x2     = intersection (L.ab,C.second_lemoine)
z.x3,z.x4     = intersection (L.bc,C.second_lemoine)
z.x5,z.x6     = intersection (L.ca,C.second_lemoine)
L.y1y6         = line : new (z.y1,z.y6)
L.y4y5         = line : new (z.y4,z.y5)
L.y2y3         = line : new (z.y2,z.y3)
\end{tkzelements}
\begin{tikzpicture}
\tkzGetNodes
\tkzDrawPolygons(a,b,c y1,y2,y3,y4,y5,y6)
\tkzDrawPoints(x1,x2,x3,x4,x5,x6,L)
\tkzDrawPoints(a,b,c,o,0,y1,y2,y3,y4,y5,y6)
\tkzLabelPoints[below right](a,b,c,o,0,y1,y2,y3,y4,y5,y6)
\tkzLabelPoints[below left](x1,x2,x3,x4,x5,x6)
\tkzLabelPoints[above](L)
\tkzDrawCircles(L,x o,p 0,a)
\tkzDrawSegments(L,0 x1,x4 x2,x5 x3,x6)
\end{tikzpicture}
```



23.56 Inversion

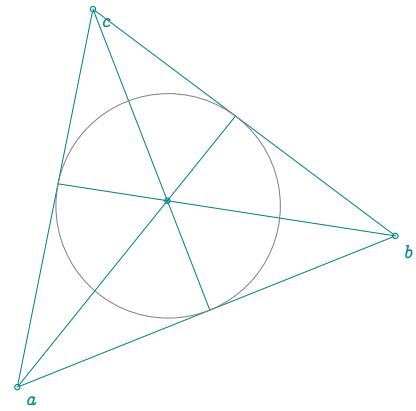
```
\begin{tkzelements}
z.A      = point: new (-1,0)
z.B      = point: new (2,2)
z.C      = point: new (2,4)
z.E      = point: new (1,6)
C.AC    = circle:   new (z.A,z.C)
L.Tt1,
L.Tt2  = C.AC: tangent_from (z.E)
z.t1   = L.Tt1.pb
z.t2   = L.Tt2.pb
L.AE   = line: new (z.A,z.E)
z.H    = L.AE : projection (z.t1)
z.Bp,
z.Ep,
z.Cp   = C.AC: inversion ( z.B, z.E, z.C )
\end{tkzelements}
```

```
\begin{tikzpicture}
\tkzGetNodes
\tkzDrawPoints(A,B,C)
\tkzDrawCircles(A,C A,B)
\tkzDrawLines(A,B' E,t1 E,t2 t1,t2 A,E)
\tkzDrawPoints(A,B,C,E,t1,t2,H,B',E')
\tkzLabelPoints(A,B,C,E,t1,t2,B',E')
\tkzLabelPoints[above](C')
\end{tikzpicture}
```



23.57 Gergonne point

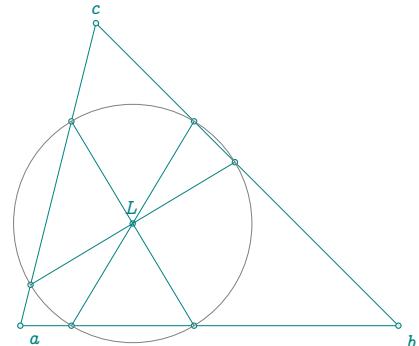
```
\begin{tkzelements}
z.a = point: new(1,0)
z.b = point: new(6,2)
z.c = point: new(2,5)
T = triangle : new (z.a,z.b,z.c)
z.g = T : gergonne_point ()
z.i = T.incenter
z.ta,z.tb,z.tc = get_points (T : intouch ())
\end{tkzelements}
\begin{tikzpicture}
\tkzGetNodes
\tkzDrawPolygons(a,b,c)
\tkzDrawPoints(a,b,c,g)
\tkzLabelPoints(a,b,c)
\tkzDrawSegments (a,ta b,tb c,tc)
\tkzDrawCircle(i,ta)
\end{tikzpicture}
```



23.58 Antiparallel through Lemoine point

```
\begin{tkzelements}
z.a = point: new (0,0)
z.b = point: new (5,0)
z.c = point: new (1,4)
T = triangle: new (z.a,z.b,z.c)
z.L = T : lemoine_point ()
L.anti = T : antiparallel (z.L,0)
z.x_0,z.x_1 = get_points (L.anti)
L.anti = T : antiparallel (z.L,1)
z.y_0,z.y_1 = get_points (L.anti)
L.anti = T : antiparallel (z.L,2)
z.z_0,z.z_1 = get_points (L.anti)
\end{tkzelements}

\begin{tikzpicture}
\tkzGetNodes
\tkzDrawPolygons(a,b,c)
\tkzDrawPoints(a,b,c,L,x_0,x_1,y_0,y_1,z_0,z_1)
\tkzLabelPoints(a,b)
\tkzLabelPoints[above](L,c)
\tkzDrawSegments(x_0,x_1 y_0,y_1 z_0,z_1)
\tkzDrawCircle(L,x_0)
\end{tikzpicture}
```



23.59 Soddy circle without function

```
\begin{tkzelements}
z.A = point : new ( 0 , 0 )
z.B = point : new ( 5 , 0 )
z.C = point : new ( 0.5 , 4 )
T.ABC = triangle : new ( z.A,z.B,z.C )
z.I = T.ABC.incenter
\end{tkzelements}
```

```

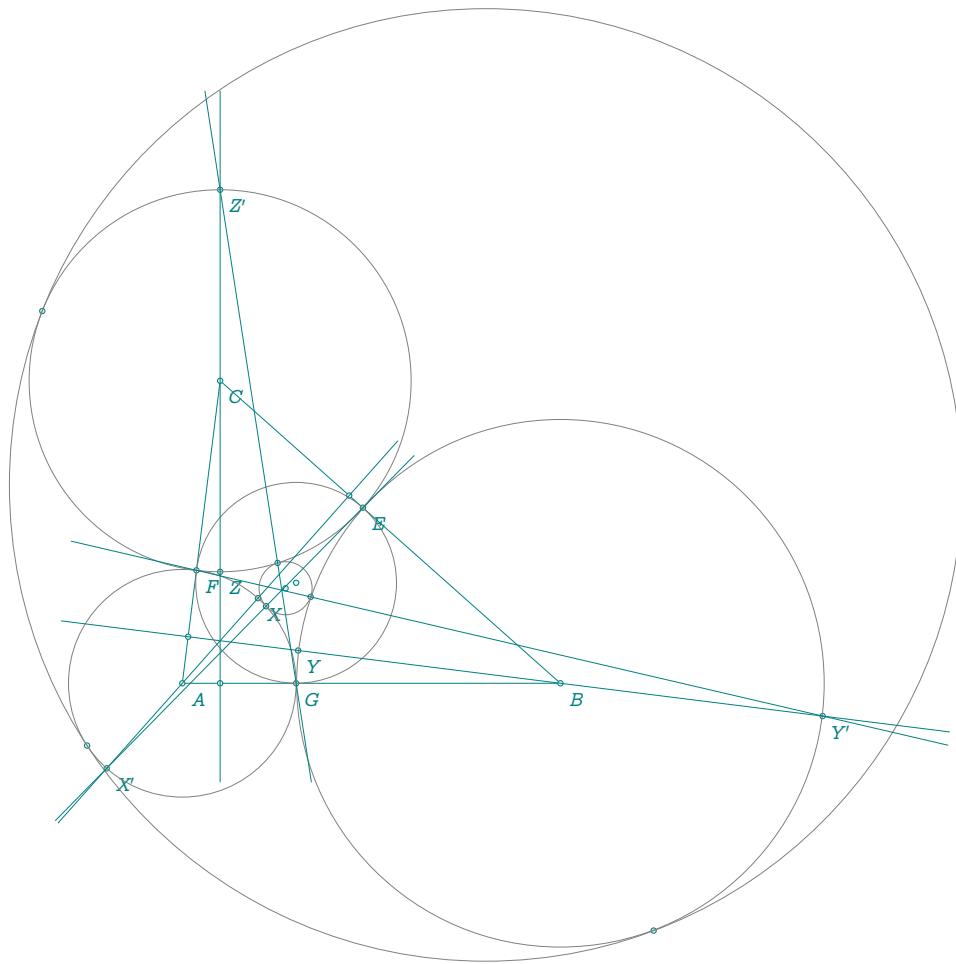
z.E,z.F,z.G = T.ABC : projection (z.I)
C.ins = circle : new (z.I,z.E)
T.orthic = T.ABC : orthic ()
z.Ha,z.Hb,z.Hc = get_points (T.orthic)
C.CF = circle : new ( z.C , z.F )
C.AG = circle : new ( z.A , z.G )
C.BE = circle : new ( z.B , z.E )
L.Ah = line : new ( z.A , z.Ha )
L.Bh = line : new ( z.B , z.Hb )
L.Ch = line : new ( z.C , z.Hc )
z.X,z.Xp = intersection (L.Ah,C.AG)
z.Y,z.Yp = intersection (L.Bh,C.BE)
z.Z,z.Zp = intersection (L.Ch,C.CF)
L.XpE = line : new (z.Xp,z.E)
L.YpF = line : new (z.Yp,z.F)
L.ZpG = line : new (z.Zp,z.G)
z.S = intersection (L.XpE,L.YpF)
z.Xi = intersection(L.XpE,C.AG)
z.Yi = intersection(L.YpF,C.BE)
_,z.Zi = intersection(L.ZpG,C.CF)
z.S = triangle : new (z.Xi,z.Yi,z.Zi).circumcenter
C.soddy_int = circle : new (z.S,z.Xi)
C.soddy_ext = C.ins : inversion (C.soddy_int)
z.w = C.soddy_ext.center
z.s = C.soddy_ext.through
z.Xip,z.Yip,z.Zip = C.ins : inversion (z.Xi,z.Yi,z.Zi)
\end{tkzelements}

```

```

\begin{tikzpicture}
\tkzGetNodes
\tkzDrawPolygon(A,B,C)
\tkzDrawPoints(A,B,C,E,F,G,Ha,Hb,Hc,X,Y,Z,X',Y',Z',Xi,Yi,Zi,I)
\tkzDrawPoints(Xi',Yi',Zi',S)
\tkzLabelPoints(A,B,C,E,F,G,X,Y,Z,X',Y',Z')
\tkzDrawCircles(A,G B,E C,F I,E S,Xi w,s)
\tkzDrawLines(X',Ha Y',Hb Z',Hc)
\tkzDrawLines(X',E Y',F Z',G)
\end{tikzpicture}

```

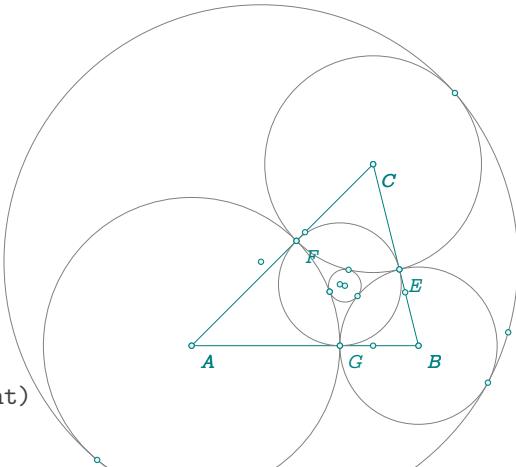


23.6Q Soddy circle with function

```
\begin{tkzelements}
z.A = point : new ( 0 , 0 )
z.B = point : new ( 5 , 0 )
z.C = point : new (4 , 4 )
T.ABC = triangle : new ( z.A,z.B,z.C )
z.I = T.ABC.incenter
z.E,z.F,z.G = T.ABC : projection (z.I)
T.orthic = T.ABC : orthic ()
z.Ha,z.Hb,z.Hc = get_points (T.orthic)
C.ins = circle : new (z.I,z.E)
z.s,z.xi,z.yi,
z.zi = T.ABC : soddy_center ()
C.soddy_int = circle : new (z.s,z.xi)
C.soddy_ext = C.ins : inversion (C.soddy_int)
z.w = C.soddy_ext.center
z.t = C.soddy_ext.through
z.Xip,z.Yip,
z.Zip = C.ins : inversion (z.xi,z.yi,z.zi)
\end{tkzelements}

\begin{tikzpicture}
\tkzGetNodes(A,B,C)

```



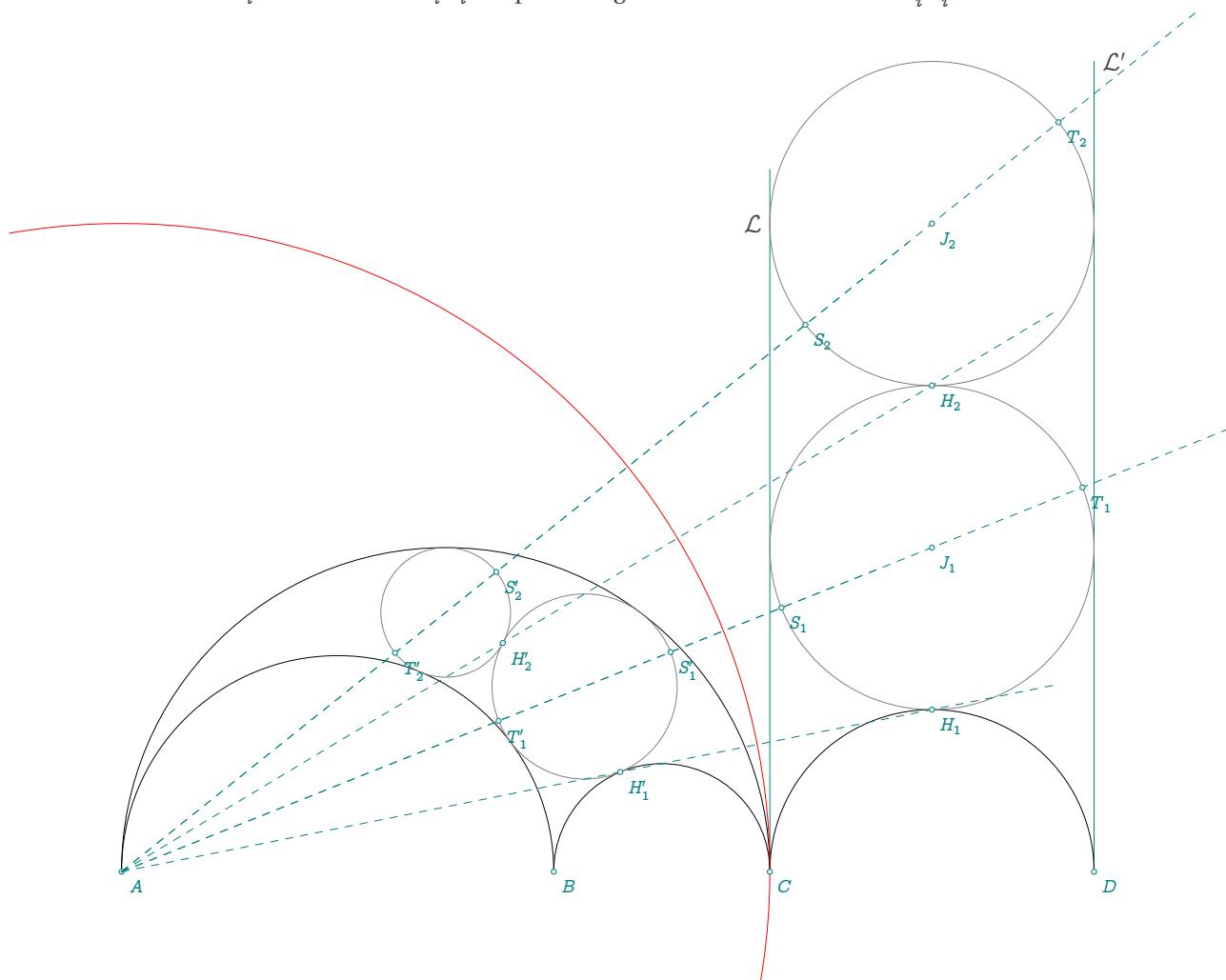
```
\tkzDrawCircles(A,G B,E C,F I,E s,xi w,t)
\tkzDrawPoints(A,B,C,E,F,G,s,w,xi,t)
\tkzLabelPoints(A,B,C)
\tkzDrawPoints(A,B,C,E,F,G,Ha,Hb,Hc,xi,yi,zi,I)
\tkzDrawPoints(Xi',Yi',Zi')
\tkzLabelPoints(A,B,C,E,F,G)
\end{tikzpicture}
```

23.6Q.1 Pappus chain

Soit le point D appartenant à la droite (AC) tel que

$$DB \cdot DA = AC^2$$

alors B est l'image de D dans l'inversion de centre A et puissance AC^2 . Les demi-cercles de diamètre $[AB]$ et $[AC]$ passent par le pôle A . Ils ont pour images les demi-droites \mathcal{L}' et \mathcal{L} .
Les cercles de centre J_i et de diamètre $S_i T_i$ ont pour images les cercles de diamètre $S'_i T'_i$.



```
\begin{tkzelements}
xG,nc      = 10,16
xB          = xC/tkzphi
xD          = (xC*xC)/xB
xJ          = (xC+xD)/2

```

```

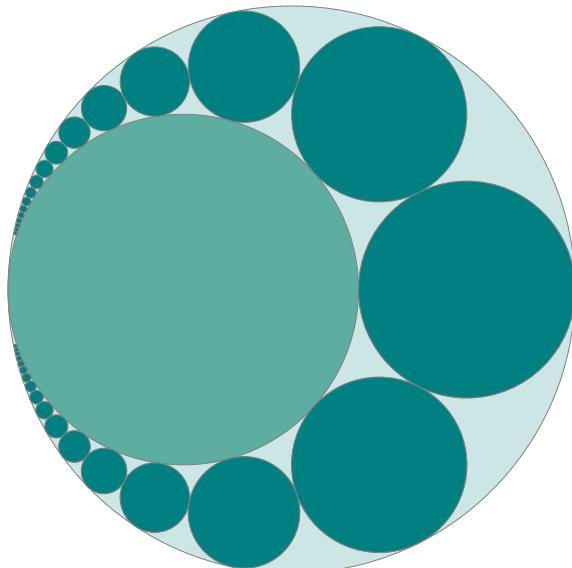
r      = xD-xJ
z.A    = point : new ( 0 , 0 )
z.B    = point : new ( xB , 0 )
z.C    = point : new ( xC , 0 )
L.AC   = line : new (z.A,z.C)
z.i    = L.AC.mid
L.AB   = line: new (z.A,z.B)
z.j    = L.AB.mid
z.D    = point : new ( xD , 0 )
C.AC   = circle: new (z.A,z.C)
for i   = -nc,nc do
  z["J"..i]  = point: new (xJ,2*r*i)
  z["H"..i]  = point: new (xJ,2*r*i-r)
  z["J"..i.."p"], z["H"..i.."p"] = C.AC : inversion (z["J"..i],z["H"..i])
  L.AJ        = line : new (z.A,z["J"..i])
  C.JH        = circle: new ( z["J"..i] , z["H"..i])
  z["S"..i], z["T"..i]           = intersection (L.AJ,C.JH)
  z["S"..i.."p"], z["T"..i.."p"] = C.AC : inversion (z["S"..i],z["T"..i])
  L.SpTp     = line: new ( z["S"..i.."p"], z["T"..i.."p"])
  z["I"..i]  = L.SpTp.mid
end
\end{tkzelements}

```

```

\def\nc{\tkzUseLua{nc}}
\begin{tikzpicture}[ultra thin]
\tkzGetNodes
\tkzDrawCircle[fill=teal!20](i,C)
\tkzDrawCircle[fill=PineGreen!60](j,B)
\foreach \i in {-\nc,...,0,...,\nc} {
\tkzDrawCircle[fill=teal]({I\i},{S\i})
}
\end{tikzpicture}

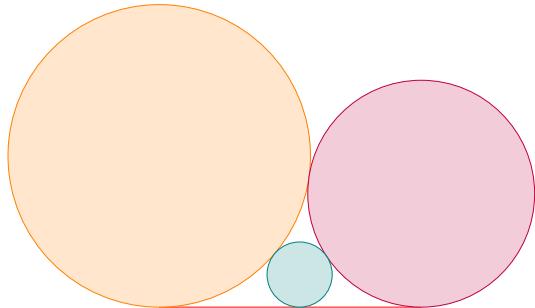
```



23.61 Three Circles

```
\begin{tkzelements}
function threecircles(c1,r1,c2,r2,c3,h1,h2)
    local xk = math.sqrt (r1*r2)
    local cx = (2*r1*math.sqrt(r2))/(math.sqrt(r1)+math.sqrt(r2))
    local cy = (r1*r2)/(math.sqrt(r1)+math.sqrt(r2))^2
    z[c2] = point : new ( 2*xk , r2 )
    z[h2] = point : new (2*xk,0)
    z[c1] = point : new (0,r1)
    z[h1] = point : new (0,0)
    L.h1h2 = line: new(z[h1],z[h2])
    z[c3] = point : new (cx,cy)
    z[h3] = L.h1h2: projection (z[c3])
end
threecircles("A",4,"B",3,"C","E","G","F")
\end{tkzelements}

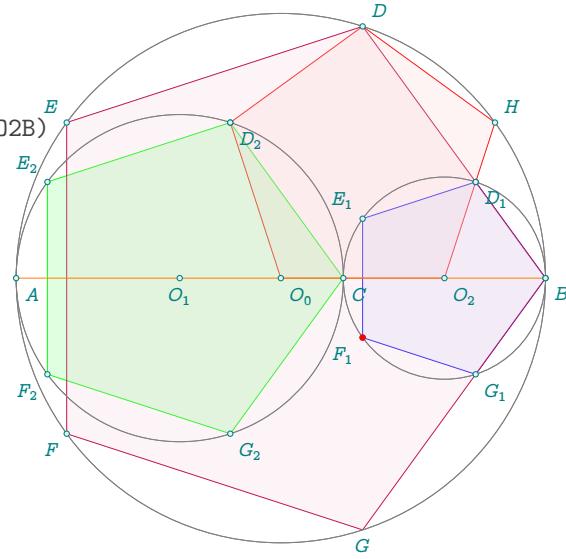
\begin{tikzpicture}
\tkzGetNodes
\tkzDrawSegment[color = red](E,F)
\tkzDrawCircle[orange,fill=orange!20](A,E)
\tkzDrawCircle[purple,fill=purple!20](B,F)
\tkzDrawCircle[teal,fill=teal!20](C,G)
\end{tikzpicture}
```



23.62 pentagons in a golden arbelos

```
\begin{tkzelements}
z.A      = point: new (Q , Q)
z.B      = point: new (1Q , Q)
L.AB     = line: new ( z.A, z.B)
z.C      = L.AB : gold_ratio ()
L.AC     = line: new ( z.A, z.C)
L.CB     = line: new ( z.C, z.B)
z.O_Q   = L.AB.mid
z.O_1   = L.AC.mid
z.O_2   = L.CB.mid
C.QQB   = circle: new ( z.O_Q, z.B)
C.01C   = circle: new ( z.O_1, z.C)
C.02B   = circle: new ( z.O_2, z.B)
z.M_Q   = C.01C : external_similitude (C.02B)
L.QQC   = line: new(z.O_Q,z.C)
T.golden = L.QQC : golden ()
z.L     = T.golden.pc
L.QQL   = line: new(z.O_Q,z.L)
z.D     = intersection (L.QQL,C.QQB)
L.DB    = line: new(z.D,z.B)
z.Z     = intersection (L.DB,C.02B)
L.DA    = line: new(z.D,z.A)
z.I     = intersection (L.DA,C.01C)
L.02Z   = line: new(z.O_2,z.Z)
z.H     = intersection (L.02Z,C.QQB)
C.BD    = circle: new ( z.B,z.D)
C.DB    = circle: new ( z.D,z.B)
_,z.G   = intersection (C.BD,C.QQB)
z.E     = intersection (C.DB,C.QQB)
C.GB    = circle: new ( z.G,z.B)
_,z.F   = intersection (C.GB,C.QQB)
k      = 1/tkzphi^2
kk    = tkzphi
z.D_1,z.E_1,z.F_1,z.G_1 = z.B : homothety (k, z.D,z.E,z.F,z.G)
z.D_2,z.E_2,z.F_2,z.G_2 = z.M_Q : homothety (kk,z.D_1,z.E_1,z.F_1,z.G_1)
\end{tkzelements}
```

```
\begin{tikzpicture}[scale=.8]
\tkzGetNodes
\tkzDrawPolygon[red](O_2,O_Q,I,D,H)
\tkzDrawPolygon[blue](B,D_1,E_1,F_1,G_1)
\tkzDrawPolygon[green](C,D_2,E_2,F_2,G_2)
\tkzDrawPolygon[purple](B,D,E,F,G)
\tkzDrawCircles(O_Q,B O_1,C O_2,B)
\tkzFillPolygon[fill=red!20,opacity=.20](O_2,O_Q,I,D,H)
\tkzFillPolygon[fill=blue!20,opacity=.20](B,D_1,E_1,F_1,G_1)
\tkzFillPolygon[fill=green!60,opacity=.20](C,D_2,E_2,F_2,G_2)
\tkzFillPolygon[fill=purple!20,opacity=.20](B,D,E,F,G)
\tkzDrawCircles(O_Q,B O_1,C O_2,B)
\tkzDrawSegments[new](A,B)
\tkzDrawPoints(A,B,C,O_Q,O_1,O_2,Z,I,H,B,D,E,F)
\tkzDrawPoints(D_1,E_1,F_1,G_1)
```



```
\tkzDrawPoints(D_2,E_2,F_2,G_2)
\tkzDrawPoints[red](F_1)
\tkzLabelPoints(A,B,C,O_0,O_2)
\tkzLabelPoints[below](O_1,G)
\tkzLabelPoints[above right](D,H)
\tkzLabelPoints[above left](E,E_1,E_2)
\tkzLabelPoints[below left](F,F_1,F_2)
\tkzLabelPoints(D_1,G_1)
\tkzLabelPoints(D_2,G_2)
\end{tikzpicture}
```

Index

attribute, 18
vector, 9, 74

circle: attribute
center, 42
ct, 42
east, 42
north, 42
opp, 42
radius, 42
south, 42
through, 42
type, 42
west, 42

circle: function
diameter(A,B), 43
new(0,A), 43
radius(0,r), 43

circle: method
antipode (pt), 43
circles_position (C1), 43
common_tangent (C), 43
draw (), 43
external_similitude (C), 43
in_out (pt), 43
in_out_disk (pt), 43
internal_similitude (C), 43
inversion (...), 43
inversion (line), 43
inversion (pt), 43
midarc (pt,pt), 43
midcircle (C), 43
orthogonal_from (pt), 43
orthogonal_through (pta,ptb), 43
point (r), 43
power (pt), 43
radical_axis (C), 43
radical_center (C1<,C2>), 43
radical_circle (C1<,C2>), 43
random_pt(lower, upper), 43
tangent_at (pt), 43
tangent_from (pt), 43

Class
circle, 9, 42
class, 23
ellipse, 9, 59
line, 9, 31
matrix, 77
parallelogram, 9, 71
point, 9, 24
Quadrilateral, 64
quadrilateral, 9
rectangle, 9, 68
regular polygon, 73
regular_polygon, 9
square, 9, 66
triangle, 9, 53

ellipse: attribute
Fa, 59
Fb, 59
Rx, 59
Ry, 59
center, 59, 61
covertex, 59, 61
slope, 59
type, 59
vertex, 59, 61

ellipse: method
east, 59
foci (f1,f2,v), 61
foci, 61
in_out (pt) , 61
new (pc, pa ,pb) , 61
new, 61
north, 59
orthoptic_circle () , 61
point (t) , 61
point, 62
radii (c,a,b,sl) , 61
radii, 62
south, 59
tangent_at (pt) , 61
tangent_from (pt) , 61
west, 59

Environment
luacode, 9, 13
tikzpicture, 13, 17, 60
tkzelements, 9, 13, 17, 18, 21, 60, 62

line: attribute
east, 31
length, 31
mid, 31
north_pa, 31
north_pb, 31
pa, 31
pb, 31
slope, 31
south_pa, 31
south_pb, 31
type, 31
vec, 31
west, 31

line: function
new(pt, pt), 33

line: method
_east(d), 33
_north_pa(d), 33
_north_pb(d), 33
_south_pa(d), 33
_south_pb(d), 33

```

_west(d),33
apollonius (r),34
as (r,an),33
barycenter (r,r),33
cheops (),33,36
circle (),34
circle_swap (),34
distance (pt),34
divine (),33,36
egyptian (),33
equilateral (<swap>),33
euclide (<swap>),33
gold (<swap>),33,36
gold_ratio (),33
golden (<swap>),33,36
harmonic_both (r),33
harmonic_ext (pt),33
harmonic_int (pt),33
in_out (pt),34
in_out_segment (pt),34
in_out,101
isosceles (an<,swap>),33
ll_from ( pt ),33
mediator (),33
midpoint (),33
new,32
normalize (),33
normalize_inv (),33
ortho_from ( pt ),33
point (r),33
projection ( obj ),34
pythagoras (),36
reflection ( obj ),34
report(d,pt),33
sa (r,an),33
school (),33
slope (),34
square (),33
sss (r,r),33
sublime (),36
translation ( obj ),34
two_angles (an,an),33
\LuaCodeDebugOn, 18

math: function
  altitude (z1,z2,z3),86
  angle_normalize (an) ,86
  bisector (z1,z2,z3),86
  bisector_ext (z1,z2,z3),86
  get_angle (z1,z2,z3),86
  islinear (z1,z2,z3) ,86
  isortho (z1,z2,z3),86
  length (a,b) ,86
  real (v) ,86
  solve_quadratic (a,b,c) ,86
  tkzinvphi,86
  tkzphi,86
  tkzsqrtphi,86

  value (r) ,35
  value (v) ,20,86
  math: method
    aligned,102
    islinear,101,102
    isortho,102
  matrix: attribute
    cols,78
    det,78
    rows,78
    set,78
    type,78
  matrix: function
    htm(),80
    new(...),80
    square(),80
    vector(),80
  matrix: metamethod
    __add(M1,M2),79
    __eq(M1,M2),79
    __mul(M1,M2),79
    __pow(M,n),79
    __sub(M1,M2),79
    __tostroing(M,n),79
    __unm(M, 79
  matrix: method
    adjugate(),80
    adjugate,84
    get(),80
    get,83
    homogenization(),80
    htm_apply(...),80
    identity,84
    inverse(),80
    inverse,83
    is_diagonal(),80
    is_diagonal,85
    is_orthogonal(),80
    is_orthogonal,85
    print(s,n),80
    print,82
    transpose(),80
    transpose,84
  misc: function
    barycenter ({z1,n1},{z2,n2}, ...),86
  obj: method
    new,23
  Object
    circle,23
    ellipse,23
    line,23,33
    parallelogram,23
    point,23,27
    quadrilateral,23
    rectangle,23
    regular_polygon,23
    square,23

```

triangle, 23
 Package
 ifthen, 17, 100
 luacode, 9
 tkz-elements.sty, 9
 package: function
 \tkzUseLua, 87
 set_lua_to_tex (list), 86
 tkzUseLua (variable), 61, 86
 parallelogram: attribute
 ab, 71
 ac, 71
 ad, 71
 bc, 71
 bd, 71
 cd, 71
 i, 71
 pa, 71
 pb, 71
 pc, 71
 pd, 71
 type, 71
 parallelogram: method
 fourth (za,zb,zc), 72
 point: attribute
 argument, 24
 im, 24
 modulus, 24
 re, 24
 type, 24
 point: function
 new(r,r), 27
 polar (d,an), 27
 polar_deg (d,an), 27
 point: metamethod
 __add(z1,z2), 97
 __concat(z1,z2), 97
 __div(z1,z2), 97
 __eq(z1,z2), 97
 __mul(z1,z2), 97
 __pow(z1,z2), 97
 __sub(z1,z2), 97
 __tonumber(z), 97
 __tostring(z), 97
 __unm(z), 97
 point: method
 Orthogonal (d), 29
 abs (z), 97
 arg (z), 97
 at (), 27
 at, 29
 conj(z), 97
 east(r), 27
 get(z), 97
 get_points (obj), 27
 homothety(r,obj), 27
 mod(z), 97
 norm (z), 97
 normalize (), 28
 normalize(), 27
 north (d), 27
 north(r), 27
 orthogonal (d), 27
 polar, 28
 print(), 27
 rotation of points, 29
 rotation(an , obj), 27
 rotation, 30
 south(r), 27
 sqrt(z), 97
 symmetry(obj), 27
 symmetry, 30
 west(r), 27
 prime, 17
 quadrilateral: attribute
 ab, 64
 ac, 64
 ad, 64
 a, 64
 bc, 64
 bd, 64
 b, 64
 cd, 64
 c, 64
 d, 64
 g, 64
 i, 64
 pa, 64
 pb, 64
 pc, 64
 pd, 64
 type, 64
 quadrilateral: method
 iscyclic (), 65
 rectangle: attribute
 ab, 68
 ac, 68
 ad, 68
 bc, 68
 bd, 68
 cd, 68
 center, 68
 diagonal, 68
 length, 68
 pa, 68
 pb, 68
 pc, 68
 pd, 68
 type, 68
 width, 68
 rectangle: method
 angle (zi,za,angle), 69
 diagonal (za,zc), 69

```

get_lengths (), 69
gold (za,zb), 69
side (za,zb,d), 69
regular_polygon: method
    incircle (), 73
    name (string), 73
    new(0,A,n), 73
regular: attribute
    angle, 73
    center, 73
    circle, 73
    exradius, 73
    inradius, 73
    proj, 73
    side, 73
    table, 73
    through, 73
    type, 73
square: attribute
    ab, 66
    ac, 66
    ad, 66
    bc, 66
    bd, 66
    cd, 66
    center, 66
    exradius, 66
    inradius, 66
    pa, 66
    pb, 66
    pc, 66
    pd, 66
    proj, 66
    side, 66
    type, 66
square: method
    rotation (zi,za), 67
    side (za,zb), 67
\tkzDrawEllipse, 60
\tkzGetNodes, 12, 13, 17, 21, 96
\tkzUseLua(value), 22
\tkzUseLua, 60
triangle: attribute
    ab, 53
    alpha, 53
    a, 53
    bc, 53
    beta, 53
    b, 53
    ca, 53
    centroid, 53
    circumcenter, 53
    c, 53
    eulercenter, 53
    gamma, 53
    incenter, 53
    orthocenter, 53
    pa, 53
    pb, 53
    pc, 53
    spiekercenter, 53
    type, 53
triangle: method
    altitude (n) , 55
    anti () , 56
    antiparallel(pt,n), 55
    area (), 56
    barycenter (ka,kb,kc), 55
    barycentric_coordinates (pt), 56
    base (u,v) , 55
    bevan_point (), 55
    bisector (n) , 55
    bisector_ext(n) , 55
    cevian (pt), 56
    check_equilateral (), 56
    circum_circle (), 55
    euler (), 56
    euler_circle (), 55
    euler_ellipse (), 56
    euler_line () , 55
    euler_points () , 55
    ex_circle (n), 55
    excentral () , 56
    extouch (), 56
    feuerbach (), 56
    feuerbach_point () , 55
    first_lemoine_circle (), 55
    gergonne_point (), 55
    in_circle (), 55
    in_out (pt), 56
    incentral (), 56
    intouch () , 56
    lemoine_point (), 55
    medial (), 56
    mittenpunkt_point (), 55
    nagel_point () , 55
    new, 53, 55
    nine_points () , 55
    orthic (), 56
    parallelogram (), 55
    projection (p) , 55
    second_lemoine_circle (), 55
    spieker_center (), 55
    spieker_circle (), 55
    steiner_circumellipse (), 56
    steiner_inellipse (), 56
    symmedian (), 56
    symmedian_line (n), 55
    symmedian_point (), 55
    tangential (), 56
underscore, 18
vector: attribute

```

head, 74
length, 74
mtx, 74
slope, 74
tail, 74
type, 74
vector: method
 __add (u,v), 75
 __mul (k,u), 75
 __sub (u,v), 75
 __unm (u), 75
 at (V), 75
 new(pt, pt), 75
 normalize(V), 75
 orthogonal(d), 75
 scale(d), 75

24 Cheat_sheet

r denotes a real number, cx complex number, d a positive real number, n an integer, an an angle, b a boolean, s a character string, pt a point, t a table, m a matrix, v variable, L a straight line, C a circle, T a triangle, E an ellipse, V a vector, Q a quadrilateral, P a parallelogram, R a rectangle, S a square, RP a regular polygon, M a matrix, O an object (pt, L,C,T), . . . a list of points or an object, < > optional argument.

point**Attributes** table(1)

re	-> r
im	-> r
type	-> s
argument	-> r
modulus	-> d
Functions table(1)	
new	-> pt
polar	-> pt
polar_deg	-> pt
Methods table(29)	
+ - * /	(pt,pt) -> pt
..	(pt,pt) -> r
~	(pt,pt) -> r
=	-> b
tostring	-> s
Methods table(2) table(30)	
conj	-> pt
abs	-> r
mod	-> d
norm	-> d
arg	-> d
get	-> r,r
sqrt	-> pt
north(d)	-> pt
south(d)	-> pt
east(d)	-> pt
west(d)	-> pt
normalize(pt)	-> pt
symmetry(...)	-> O
rotation(an, ...)	-> O
homothety(r, ...)	-> O
orthogonal(d)	-> pt
at()	-> pt
print()	-> s

line**Attributes** table(3)

pa,pb	-> pt
type	-> s
mid	-> pt
north_pa	-> pt
north_pb	-> pt
south_pa	-> pt
south_pb	-> pt
east	-> pt
west	-> pt
slope	-> r
length	-> d
vec	-> V

Methods table(6)

new (pt,pt)	-> d
distance (pt)	-> d
slope ()	-> r
in_out (pt)	-> b
in_out_segment (pt)	-> b
barycenter (r,r)	-> pt
point (t)	-> pt
midpoint ()	-> pt
harmonic_int (pt)	-> pt
harmonic_ext (pt)	-> pt
harmonic_both (d)	-> pt
gold_ratio()	-> pt
normalize ()	-> pt
normalize_inv ()	-> pt
_north_pa (d)	-> pt
_north_pb (d)	-> pt
_south_pa (d)	-> pt
_south_pb (d)	-> pt
_east (d)	-> pt
_west (d)	-> pt
translation (...)	-> O
projection (...)	-> O
reflection (...)	-> O
ll_from (pt)	-> L
ortho_from (pt)	-> L
mediator ()	-> L
circle ()	-> C
circle_swap ()	-> C
diameter ()	-> C
apollonius (r)	-> C
equilateral (<swap>)	-> T
isosceles (an,<swap>)	-> T
school ()	-> T
two_angles (an,an)	-> T
half ()	-> T
sss (r,r,r)	-> T
sas (r,an)	-> T
ssa (r,an)	-> T
gold (<swap>)	-> T
euclide (<swap>)	-> T
golden (<swap>)	-> T
divine ()	-> T
cheops ()	-> T
pythagoras ()	-> T
sublime ()	-> T
egyptian ()	-> T
square (<swap>)	-> T
report (r,pt)	-> T

triangle**Attributes** table(9)

pa,pb,pc	-> pt
circumcenter	-> pt
centroid	-> pt
incenter	-> pt
eulercenter	-> pt
orthocenter	-> pt
spiekercenter	-> pt
type	-> s
a	-> d
b	-> d
c	-> d
ab	-> L
bc	-> L
ca	-> L
alpha	-> r
beta	-> r
gamma	-> r
Methods table(10)	
new (pt,pt,pt)	-> pt
trilinear (r,r,r)	-> pt
barycentric (r,r,r)	-> pt
bevan_point ()	-> pt
mittelpunkt_point ()	-> pt
gergonne_point ()	-> pt
nagel_point ()	-> pt
feuerbach_point ()	-> pt
lemoine_point()	-> pt
symmedian_point()	-> pt
spieker_center()	-> pt
barycenter (r,r,r)	-> pt
base (u,v)	-> pt
euler_points ()	-> pt
nine_points ()	-> pt
point (t)	-> pt
soddy_center ()	-> pt
euler_line ()	-> L
symmedian_line (n)	-> L
altitude (n)	-> L
bisector (n)	-> L
bisector_ext(n)	-> L
antiparallel(pt,n)	-> L
euler_circle ()	-> C
circum_circle()	-> C
in_circle ()	-> C
ex_circle (n)	-> C
first_lemoine_circle()	-> C
second_lemoine_circle()	-> C
spieker_circle()	-> C
soddy_circle ()	-> C
orthic()	-> T

medial()	-> T		diagonal (pt,pt,<swap>)	-> R
incentral()	-> T	ellipse	side (pt,pt,r,<swap>)	-> R
excentral()	-> T	Attributes table(12)	get_lengths ()	->r,r
intouch()	-> T	center	-> pt	
contact()	-> T	vertex	-> pt	
extouch()	-> T	covertex	-> pt	
feuerbach()	-> T	Fa	-> pt	
anti ()	-> T	Fb	-> pt	
tangential ()	-> T	north	-> pt	
cevian (pt)	-> T	south	-> pt	
symmedian ()	-> T	east	-> pt	
euler ()	-> T	west	-> pt	
projection (pt)	-> pt,pt,pt	Rx	-> d	
parallelogram ()	-> pt	Ry	-> d	
area ()	-> d	slope	-> r	
barycentric_coordinates(pt)		type	-> s	
-> r,r,r		Methods table(12)	Methods table(14)	
in_out (pt)	-> pt	new (pt,pt,pt)	new (pt,pt,pt,pt)	-> Q
check_equilateral ()	-> b	foci (pt,pt,pt)	iscyclic ()	-> b
circle		radii (pt,r,r,an)		
Attributes table(7)		in_out (pt)		
center	-> pt	tangent_at (pt)		
through	-> pt	tangent_from (pt)		
north	-> pt	point (r)		
south	-> pt	square		
east	-> pt	Attributes table(15)		
west	-> pt	pa,pb,pc,pd		
opp	-> pt	type		
type	-> s	side		
radius	-> d	center		
ct	-> L	extradius		
Methods table(8)		inradius		
new (pt,pt)	-> C	diagonal		
radius (pt, r)	-> C	proj		
diameter (pt,pt)	-> C	ab bc cd da		
in_out (pt)	-> b	ac bd		
in_out_disk (pt)	-> b	Methods table(16)		
circles_position (C)	-> s	new (pt,pt,pt,pt)		
power (pt)	-> r	rotation (pt,pt)		
antipode (pt)	-> pt	side (pt,pt,<swap>)		
midarc (pt,pt)	-> pt	rectangle		
point (r)	-> pt	Attributes table(17)		
random_pt (lower, upper)	-> pt	pa,pb,pc,pd		
internal_similitude (C)	-> pt	type		
external_similitude (C)	-> pt	center		
radical_center(C,<C>)	-> pt	extradius		
tangent_at (pt)	-> L	length		
radical_axis (C)	-> L	width		
radical_circle(C,<C>)	-> C	diagonal		
orthogonal_from (pt)	-> C	ab bc cd da		
orthogonal_through(pt,pt)	-> C	ac bd		
midcircle(C)	-> C	Methods table(18)		
external_tangent(C)	-> L,L	new (pt,pt,pt,pt)		
internal_tangent(C)	-> L,L	angle (pt,pt,an)		
common_tangent(C)	-> L,L	gold (pt,pt,<swap>)		
tangent_from (pt)	-> L,L	vector		
inversion (...)	-> O	Attributes table(23)		
		type		-> s
		norm		-> d
		slope		-> r
		mtx		-> M
		Methods table(24)		
		new (pt,pt)		-> V
		+ - *		-> pt
		normalize (V)		-> V
		orthogonal (d)		-> V
		scale (r)		-> V

at (pt)	-> V	print	-> s	isortho(pt,pt,pt)	-> b
matrix		get	-> r/cx	value{r}	-> r
Attributes table(25)		inverse	-> m	real	-> r
set	-> t	adjugate	-> m	angle_normalize (an)	-> an
rows	-> n	transpose	-> m	barycenter (...)	-> pt
cols	-> n	is_diagonal	-> b	bisector (pt,pt,pt)	-> L
type	-> s	is_orthogonal	-> b	bisector_ext (pt,pt,pt)	-> L
det	-> r	homogenization	-> m	altitude (pt,pt,pt)	-> L
Functions table(27)		htm_apply	-> m	midpoint (pt,pt)	-> pt
new	-> m			equilateral (pt,pt)	-> T
square	-> m	Misc.		format_number(r,n)	-> r
htm	-> m	Attributes table(28)		solve_quadratic(cx,cx,cx)	-> cx,cx
vector	-> m	scale (default =1)	-> r	\tkzUseLua{v}	-> s
Metamethods table(26)		tkzphi	-> r		
+ - * (m,m)	-> m	tkzinvphi	-> r		
^ (m,n)	-> m	tkzsqrtpi	-> r		
=	-> b	tkz_epsilon (default=1e-8)	-> r		
tostring	-> s	length	-> d		
Method table(27)		islinear(pt,pt,pt)	-> b		
				Macros	
				\tkzDN[n]{r}	-> r
				\tkzDrawLuaEllipse((pt,pt,pt))	